

SonicWall[®] SonicOS 6.5
NS_{sp} 12000 / SM 9800
Connectivity

Administration

SONICWALL[®]

Contents

Part 1. Connectivity | VPN

VPN Overview	9
About Virtual Private Networks	9
VPN Types	10
IPsec VPN	10
DHCP over VPN	10
L2TP with IPsec	11
SSL VPN	11
VPN Security	12
About IKEv1	13
About IKEv2	13
Mobility and Multi-homing Protocol for IKEv2 (MOBIKE)	14
About IPsec (Phase 2) Proposal	14
About Suite B Cryptography	14
VPN Base Settings and Display	15
VPN Global Settings	16
VPN Policies	16
Currently Active VPN Tunnels	17
IPv6 VPN Configuration	18
VPN Auto-Added Access Rule Control	19
Site to Site VPNs	20
Planning Site to Site Configurations	20
General VPN Configuration	21
Configuring Settings on the General Screen	22
Configuring Settings on the Network Screen	23
Configuring Settings on the Proposals Screen	24
Configuring Settings on the Advanced Screen	24
Managing GroupVPN Policies	26
Configuring IKE Using a Preshared Secret Key	27
Configuring IKE Using 3rd Party Certificates	31
Exporting a GroupVPN Client Policy	37
Creating Site to Site VPN Policies	39
Configuring with a Preshared Secret Key	39
Configuring with a Third Party Certificate	47
Configuring the Remote SonicWall Network Security Appliance	56
Configuring VPN Failover to a Static Route	60
VPN Auto Provisioning	62
About VPN Auto Provisioning	62
Defining SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning	62
Benefits of SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning	63
How SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning Works	63

Supported Platforms	65
Configuring a VPN AP Server	66
Starting the VPN AP Server Configuration	66
Configuring VPN AP Server Settings on General	67
Configuring VPN AP Server Settings on Network	69
Configuring Advanced Settings on Proposals	70
Configuring Advanced Settings on Advanced	72
Tunnel Interface Route-Based VPN	73
Terminology	73
Adding a Tunnel Interface	74
Creating a Static Route for the Tunnel Interface	80
Route Entries for Different Network Segments	81
Redundant Static Routes for a Network	81
Configuring Advanced VPN Settings	82
Configuring Advanced VPN Settings	83
Configuring IKEv2 Settings	84
Using OCSP with NSsp and SM 9800 Appliances	85
OpenCA OCSP Responder	86
Loading Certificates to Use with OCSP	86
Using OCSP with VPN Policies	86
Configuring DHCP over VPN	87
About DHCP Relay Mode	87
Configuring the Central Gateway for DHCP Over VPN	88
Configuring DHCP over VPN Remote Gateway	89
Current DHCP over VPN Leases	91
Configuring L2TP Servers and VPN Client Access	92
Configuring the L2TP Server	92
Viewing Currently Active L2TP Sessions	94
Configuring Microsoft Windows L2TP VPN Client Access	94
Configuring Google Android L2TP VPN Client Access	97
AWS VPN	100
Overview	100
Creating a New VPN Connection	101
Reviewing the VPN Connection	102
Configuration on the Firewall	103
Configuration on Amazon Web Services	104
Route Propagation	104
AWS Regions	107
Deleting VPN Connections	107

Part 2. Connectivity | SSL VPN

About SSL VPN	110
About NetExtender	110
Creating an Address Object for the NetExtender Range	111
Setting Up Access	112
Configuring Proxies	112
Installing the Stand-Alone Client	113
Configuring Users for SSL VPN Access	113
For Local Users	113
For RADIUS and LDAP Users	114
For Tunnel All Mode Access	114
Biometric Authentication	115
Configuring SSL VPN Server Behavior	116
SSL VPN Status on Zones	117
SSL VPN Server Settings	117
RADIUS User Settings	118
SSL VPN Client Download URL	118
Configuring SSL VPN Client Settings	119
Configuring the Default Device Profile	119
Configuring the Settings Options	120
Configuring the Client Routes	120
Configuring Client Settings	121
Configuring Device Profile Settings for IPv6	124
Configuring the SonicPoint L3 Management Default Device Profile	124
Configuring the SSL VPN Web Portal	126
Portal Settings	126
Portal Logo Settings	127
Configuring Virtual Office	128
Accessing the Virtual Office Portal	128
Using NetExtender	129
Configuring SSL VPN Bookmarks	129

Part 3. Connectivity | Access Points

Understanding SonicWall Access Points	134
Access Point Feature Matrix	134
Access Point Features	135
SonicPoint/SonicWave Capabilities	136
Certifications and Compliance	137
Access Point Floor Plan View	138
Access Point Topology View	138
Intrusion Detection/Prevention	138
Virtual Access Points	139

Access Point WMM Configuration	139
Japanese and International Access Point Support	139
Planning and Site Survey	140
Prerequisites	140
Site Survey and Planning	141
PoE and PoE+	141
Best Practices for Access Point Deployment	143
Switches in the Infrastructure	143
Wiring Considerations	145
Channels	145
Spanning-Tree	145
VTP and GVRP Trunking Protocols	145
Port-Aggregation	145
Portshielding	146
Broadcast Throttling/Broadcast Storm	146
Speed and Duplex	146
SonicPoint Auto Provisioning	146
Access Point Licensing	148
SonicWave Licensing	148
Licensing Status	148
Manual License Update	149
Automatic License Update	150
Before Managing SonicPoint/SonicWaves	150
Updating SonicPoint/SonicWave Firmware	150
Resetting the SonicPoint	151
Access Points and RADIUS Accounting	151
Setting up the Radius Accounting Server	152
Access Point Dashboard	153
Feature Limitations	154
Access Point Snapshot	154
Access Point Online/Offline	154
Client Association	154
Real-Time Bandwidth	155
Client Report	155
OS Type	155
Top Client	156
Real-Time Client Monitor	156
Access Point Base Settings	157
Provisioning Overview	157
Creating/Modifying Provisioning Profiles	158
General Settings for Provisioning Profile	160
Radio 0/1 Basic Settings for Provisioning Profile	162
Radio 0/1 Advanced Settings for Provisioning Profiles	170
Sensor Settings for Provisioning Profiles	174
3G/4G/LTE WWAN Settings for Provisioning Profiles	174
Product Specific Configuration Notes	179

Managing Access Points	179
Synchronize Access Points	179
Delete Access Point Profiles	179
Delete SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects	180
Reboot SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects	180
Modify SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects	181
Access Point Floor Plan	182
Managing the Floor Plans	182
Selecting a Floor Plan	183
Create a Floor Plan	184
Edit a Floor Plan	184
Set Measuring Scale	185
Managing Access Points	186
Available Access Points	186
Added Access Points	186
Remove Access Points	187
Export Image	187
Context Menu	187
Access Point Topology View	188
Managing the Topology View	189
Managing Access Points in the Topology View	189
Editing an Access Point	189
Showing Statistics	190
Monitor Status on an Access Point	191
Delete an Access Point	193
Configuring SonicPoint Intrusion Detection Services	194
Scanning Access Points	195
Authorizing Access Points	196
Configuring Advanced IDP	197
Enabling Advanced IDP on a Profile	197
Configuring Advanced IDP	198
Access Point Packet Capture	200
Configuring Virtual Access Points	202
Before Configuring VAPs	203
Determining Your VAP Needs	204
Determining Security Configurations	204
Sample Network Definitions	204
Prerequisites	205
VAP Configuration Worksheet	205
Access Point VAP Configuration Task List	206
Virtual Access Points Profiles	207
Virtual Access Point Schedule Settings	208
Virtual Access Point Profile Settings	209

ACL Enforcement	211
Remote MAC Address Access Control Settings	212
Virtual Access Points	212
General Settings	213
Advanced Settings	214
Virtual Access Point Groups	214
Configuring FairNet	216
FairNet Features	216
Management Interface Overview	217
Configuring FairNet	218
Configuring Wi-Fi MultiMedia	219
WMM Access Categories	219
Assigning Traffic to Access Categories	221
Specifying Firewall Services and Access Rules	221
VLAN Tagging	221
Configuring Wi-Fi Multimedia Parameters	222
Configuring WMM	222
Creating a WMM Profile for an Access Point	224
Deleting WMM Profiles	224
Access Point 3G/4G/LTE WWAN	225

Part 4. Connectivity | Support

SonicWall Support	227
About This Document	228

Connectivity | VPN

- VPN Overview
- Site to Site VPNs
- VPN Auto Provisioning
- Tunnel Interface Route-Based VPN
- Configuring Advanced VPN Settings
- Configuring DHCP over VPN
- Configuring L2TP Servers and VPN Client Access
- AWS VPN

VPN Overview

The VPN options provide the features for configuring and displaying your VPN policies. You can configure various types of IPsec VPN policies, such as site to site policies, including GroupVPN, and route-based Tunnel Interface policies. For specific details on the setting for these kinds of policies, go to the following sections:

- [Site to Site VPNs](#)
- [VPN Auto Provisioning](#)
- [Tunnel Interface Route-Based VPN](#)

This section provides information on VPN types, discusses some of the security options you can select, and describes the interface for the **VPN > Base Settings** page on the **MANAGE** view. Subsequent sections describe how to configure site to site and route-based VPN, advanced settings, DHCP over VPN and L2TP servers.

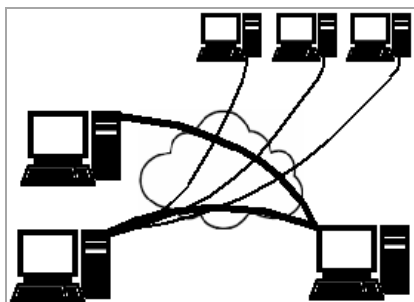
Topics:

- [About Virtual Private Networks](#)
- [VPN Types](#)
- [VPN Security](#)
- [VPN Base Settings and Display](#)
- [IPv6 VPN Configuration](#)
- [VPN Auto-Added Access Rule Control](#)

About Virtual Private Networks

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) provides a secure connection between two or more computers or protected networks over the public Internet. It provides authentication to ensure that the information is going to and from the correct parties. It also provides security to protect the data from viewing or tampering en route.

A VPN is created by establishing a secure tunnel through the Internet. This tunnel is a virtual point-to-point connection through the use of dedicated connections, virtual tunneling protocols, or traffic encryption. It is flexible in that you can change it at any time to add more nodes, change the nodes, or remove them altogether. VPN is less costly, because it uses the existing Internet infrastructure.



VPNs can support either remote access—connecting a user’s computer to a corporate network—or site to site, which is connecting two networks. A VPN can also be used to interconnect two similar networks over a dissimilar middle network: for example, two IPv6 networks connecting over an IPv4 network.

VPN systems may be classified by:

- Protocols used to tunnel the traffic
- Tunnel's termination point location, for example, on the customer edge or network provider edge
- Type of topology of connections, such as site to site or network to network
- Levels of security provided
- OSI layer they present to the connecting network, such as Layer 2 circuits or Layer 3 network connectivity
- Number of simultaneous connections

VPN Types

Several types of VPN protocols can be configured for use:

- [IPsec VPN](#)
- [DHCP over VPN](#)
- [L2TP with IPsec](#)
- [SSL VPN](#)

IPsec VPN

SonicOS supports the creation and management of IPsec VPNs. These VPNs are primarily configured on the **MANAGE** view at **VPN > Base Settings** and **VPN > Advanced Settings**.

IPsec (Internet Protocol Security) is a standards-based security protocol that was initially developed for IPv6, but it is also widely used with IPv4 and the Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol. Its design meets most security goals of authentication, integrity, and confidentiality. IPsec uses encryption and encapsulates an IP packet inside an IPsec packet. De-encapsulation happens at the end of the tunnel, where the original IP packet is decrypted and forwarded to its intended destination.

An advantage of using IPsec is that security arrangements can be handled without requiring changes to individual user computers. It provides two types of security service:

- Authentication Header (AH), which essentially allows authentication of the sender of data
- Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP), which supports both authentication of the sender and encryption of data

You can use IPsec to develop policy based VPN (site to site) or route-based VPN tunnels or Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP)

DHCP over VPN

SonicOS allows you to configure a firewall to obtain an IP address lease from a DHCP server at the other end of a VPN tunnel. In some network deployments, you want to have all VPN networks on one logical IP subnet and create the appearance of all VPN networks residing in one IP subnet address space. This facilitates IP address administration for the networks using VPN tunnels.

The firewall at the remote and central sites are configured for VPN tunnels for initial DHCP traffic as well as subsequent IP traffic between the sites. The firewall at the remote site passes DHCP broadcast packets through its VPN tunnel. The firewall at the central site relays DHCP packets from the client on the remote network to the DHCP server on the central site.

L2TP with IPsec

Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) is a tunneling protocol used to support VPNs or as part of the delivery of services by ISPs. It does not provide any encryption or confidentiality by itself, and because of that lack of confidentiality in the L2TP protocol, it is often implemented along with IPsec. The general process for setting up an L2TP/IPsec VPN is:

- 1 Negotiate an IPsec security association (SA), typically through Internet key exchange (IKE). This is carried out over UDP port 500, and commonly uses either a shared password (also called *pre-shared keys*), public keys, or X.509 certificates on both ends, although other keying methods exist.
- 2 Establish Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) communication in transport mode. The IP protocol number for ESP is 50 (compare TCP's 6 and UDP's 17). At this point, a secure channel has been established, but no tunneling is taking place.
- 3 Negotiate and establish L2TP tunnel between the SA endpoints. The actual negotiation of parameters takes place over the SA's secure channel, within the IPsec encryption. L2TP uses UDP port 1701.

When the process is complete, L2TP packets between the endpoints are encapsulated by IPsec. Since the L2TP packet itself is wrapped and hidden within the IPsec packet, no information about the internal private network can be garnered from the encrypted packet. Also, UDP port 1701 does not need to be opened on firewalls between the endpoints, since the inner packets are not acted upon until after IPsec data has been decrypted and stripped, which only takes place at the endpoints.

SSL VPN

An SSL VPN (Secure Sockets Layer virtual private network) is a form of VPN that can be used with a standard Web browser. In contrast to the traditional IPsec VPN, an SSL VPN does not require the installation of specialized client software on the end user's computer. It can be used to give remote users access to Web applications, client/server applications, and internal network connections.

An SSL VPN consists of one or more VPN devices to which the user connects by using his Web browser. The traffic between the Web browser and the SSL VPN device is encrypted with the SSL protocol or its successor, the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol. An SSL VPN offers versatility, ease of use and granular control for a range of users on a variety of computers, accessing resources from many locations. The two major types of SSL VPNs are:

- SSL Portal VPN
- SSL Tunnel VPN

The SSL Portal VPN allows single SSL connection to a Web site so the end user can securely access multiple network services. The site is called a portal because it is one door (a single page) that leads to many other resources. The remote user accesses the SSL VPN gateway using any modern Web browser, identifies himself or herself to the gateway using an authentication method supported by the gateway and is then presented with a Web page that acts as the portal to the other services.

The SSL tunnel VPN allows a Web browser to securely access multiple network services, including applications and protocols that are not Web-based, through a tunnel that is running under SSL. SSL tunnel VPNs require that the Web browser be able to handle active content, which allows them to provide functionality that is not accessible to SSL portal VPNs. Examples of active content include Java, JavaScript, Active X, or Flash applications or plug-ins.

SSL uses a program layer located between the Internet's Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) and Transport Control Protocol (TCP) layers. It also uses the public-and-private key encryption system from RSA, which also includes the use of a digital certificate. An SRA/SMA appliance uses SSL to secure the VPN tunnel. One advantage of SSL VPN is that SSL is built into most web browsers. No special VPN client software or hardware is required.

NOTE: SonicWall makes Secure Mobile Access (SMA) appliances you can use in concert with or independently of a SonicWall network security appliance running SonicOS. For information on SonicWall SMA appliances, refer to <https://www.sonicwall.com/en-us/products>.

VPN Security

IPsec VPN traffic is secured in two stages:

- 1 **Authentication:** The first phase establishes the authenticity of the sender and receiver of the traffic using an exchange of the public key portion of a public-private key pair. This phase must be successful before the VPN tunnel can be established.
- 2 **Encryption:** The traffic in the VPN tunnel is encrypted, using an encryption algorithm such as AES or 3DES.

Unless you use a manual key (which must be typed identically into each node in the VPN), the exchange of information to authenticate the members of the VPN and encrypt/decrypt the data uses the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol for exchanging authentication information (keys) and establishing the VPN tunnel. SonicOS supports two versions of IKE:

IKE version 1 (IKEv1) Uses a two-phase process to secure the VPN tunnel. First, the two nodes authenticate each other and then they negotiate the methods of encryption.

You can find more information about IKEv1 in the three specifications that initially define IKE: RFC 2407, RFC 2408, and RFC 2409. They are available on the web at:

- <http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2407.html> – *The Internet IP Security Domain of Interpretation for ISAKMP*
- <http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2408.html> – *RFC 2408 - Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP)*
- <http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2409.html> – *RFC 2409 - The Internet Key Exchange (IKE)*

IKE version 2 (IKEv2) Is the default type for new VPN policies because of improved security, simplified architecture, and enhanced support for remote users. A VPN tunnel is initiated with a pair of message exchanges. The first pair of messages negotiate cryptographic algorithms, exchange nonces (random values generated and sent to guard against repeated messages), and perform a public key exchange. The second pair of messages authenticates the previous messages, exchange identities and certificates, and establish the first CHILD_SA. Parts of these messages are encrypted and integrity protected with keys established through the first exchange, so the identities are hidden from eavesdroppers and all fields in all the messages are authenticated.

You can find more information about IKEv2 in the specification, RFC 4306, available on the Web at: <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4306.txt>.

IMPORTANT: IKEv2 is not compatible with IKEv1. When using IKEv2, all nodes in the VPN must use IKEv2 to establish the tunnels.
DHCP over VPN is not supported in IKEv2.

For more VPN security information, see:

- [About IKEv1](#)

- [About IKEv2](#)
- [Mobility and Multi-homing Protocol for IKEv2 \(MOBIKE\)](#)
- [About IPsec \(Phase 2\) Proposal](#)
- [About Suite B Cryptography](#)

About IKEv1

In IKEv1, two modes are used to exchange authentication information:

- **Main Mode:** The node or gateway initiating the VPN queries the node or gateway on the receiving end, and they exchange authentication methods, public keys, and identity information. This usually requires six messages back and forth. The order of authentication messages in Main Mode is:
 - 1) The initiator sends a list of cryptographic algorithms the initiator supports.
 - 2) The responder replies with a list of supported cryptographic algorithms.
 - 3) The initiator send a public key (part of a Diffie-Hellman public/private key pair) for the first mutually supported cryptographic algorithm.
 - 4) The responder replies with the public key for the same cryptographic algorithm.
 - 5) The initiator sends identity information (usually a certificate).
 - 6) The responder replies with identity information.
- **Aggressive Mode:** To reduce the number of messages exchanged during authentication by half, the negotiation of which cryptographic algorithm to use is eliminated. The initiator proposes one algorithm and the responder replies if it supports that algorithm:
 - 1) The initiator proposes a cryptographic algorithm to use and sends its public key.
 - 2) The responder replies with a public key and identity proof.
 - 3) The initiator sends an identification proof. After authenticating, the VPN tunnel is established with two SAs, one from each node to the other.

About IKEv2

IKE version 2 (IKEv2) is a newer protocol for negotiating and establishing security associations. Secondary gateways are supported with IKEv2. IKEv2 is the default proposal type for new VPN policies.

IKEv2 has the following advantages over IKEv1:

- More secure
- More reliable
- Simpler
- Faster
- Extensible
- Fewer message exchanges to establish connections
- EAP Authentication support
- MOBIKE support
- Built-in NAT traversal
- Keep Alive is enabled as default

IKEv2 supports IP address allocation and EAP to enable different authentication methods and remote access scenarios. Using IKEv2 greatly reduces the number of message exchanges needed to establish a Security Association over IKEv1 Main Mode, while being more secure and flexible than IKEv1 Aggressive Mode. This reduces the delays during re-keying. As VPNs grow to include more and more tunnels between multiple nodes or gateways, IKEv2 reduces the number of Security Associations required per tunnel, thus reducing required bandwidth and housekeeping overhead.

Security Associations (SAs) in IKEv2 are called Child SAs and can be created, modified, and deleted independently at any time during the life of the VPN tunnel.

Mobility and Multi-homing Protocol for IKEv2 (MOBIKE)

The Mobility and Multi-homing Protocol (MOBIKE) for IKEv2 provides the ability for maintaining a VPN session, when a user moves from one IP address to another, without the need for reestablishing IKE security associations with the gateway. For example, a user could establish a VPN tunnel while using a fixed Ethernet connection in the office. MOBIKE allows the user to disconnect the laptop and move to the office's wireless LAN without interrupting the VPN session.

MOBIKE operation is transparent and does not require any extra configuration by you or consideration by users.

About IPsec (Phase 2) Proposal

The IPsec (Phase 2) proposal occurs with both IKEv1 and IKEv2. In this phase, the two parties negotiate the type of security to use, which encryption methods to use for the traffic through the tunnel (if needed), and negotiate the lifetime of the tunnel before re-keying is needed.

The two types of security for individual packets are:

- **Encryption Secured Payload (ESP)**, in which the data portion of each packet is encrypted using a protocol negotiated between the parties.
- **Authentication Header (AH)**, in which the header of each packet contains authentication information to ensure the information is authenticated and has not been tampered with. No encryption is used for the data with AH.

SonicOS supports the following **Encryption** methods for traffic through the VPN:

- DES
- 3DES
- None
- AES-128
- AES-192
- AES-256
- AESGCM16-128
- AESGCM16-192
- AESGCM16-256
- AESGMAC-128
- AESGMAC-192
- AESGMAC-256

SonicOS supports the following **Authentication** methods:

- MD5
- SHA1
- SHA256
- SHA384
- SHA512
- AES-XCBC
- None

About Suite B Cryptography

SonicOS supports Suite B cryptography, which is a set of cryptographic algorithms promulgated by the National Security Agency as part of its Cryptographic Modernization Program. It serves as an interoperable cryptographic base for both classified and unclassified information. Suite B cryptography is approved by National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) for use by the U.S. Government.

Most of the Suite B components are adopted from the FIPS standard:

- Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) with key sizes of 128 to 256 bits (provides adequate protection for classified information up to the SECRET level).
- Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) digital signatures (provides adequate protection for classified information up to the SECRET level).
- Elliptic Curve Diffie Hellman (ECDH) key agreement (provides adequate protection for classified information up to the SECRET level).
- Secure Hash Algorithm 2 (SHA256, SHA384, SHA512) message digest (provides adequate protection for classified information up to the TOP SECRET level).

VPN Base Settings and Display

The **VPN > Base Settings** page provides a series of tables and settings, depending on the options selected. For information about how to navigate the tables and settings, refer to the *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 About SonicOS* administration documentation.

For details on the **VPN > Base Settings** page, refer to:

- [VPN Global Settings](#)
- [VPN Policies](#)
- [Currently Active VPN Tunnels](#)

VPN Global Settings

Enable VPN
 Unique Firewall Identifier:

View IP Version: IPv4 IPv6

VPN Policies

Refresh Interval (secs) Items per page Items to 2 (of 2)

<input type="checkbox"/>	#	Name	Gateway	Destinations	Crypto Suite	Enable	Configure
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	WAN GroupVPN			ESP: 3DES/HMAC SHA1 (IKE)	<input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	WLAN GroupVPN			ESP: 3DES/HMAC SHA1 (IKE)	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Site To Site Policies: 0 Policies Defined, 0 Policies Enabled, 10 Maximum Policies Allowed
 GroupVPN Policies: 2 Policies Defined, 0 Policies Enabled, 25 Maximum Policies Allowed

Currently Active VPN Tunnels

Refresh Interval (secs) Items per page Items to 0 (of 0)

#	Created	Name	Local	Remote	Gateway
No Entries					

No Active IPv4 VPN Tunnels

VPN Global Settings

VPN Global Settings

Enable VPN

Unique Firewall Identifier:

The **Global VPN Settings** section of the **VPN > Base Settings** page displays the following information:

- Enable VPN** Select to enable VPN policies through the SonicWall® security policies.
- Unique Firewall Identifier** Identifies this SonicWall appliance when configuring VPN tunnels. The default value is the serial number of the appliance. You can change the identifier to something meaningful to you.
- View IP Version** Sets IP version view. Options are **IPv4** or **IPv6**.







SonicWall VPN supports both IPv4 and IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 4 and Internet Protocol version 6). You can toggle between the versions by selecting the one you want in the upper right side of the window. The default view is for IPv4.

View IP Version: IPv4 IPv6

VPN Policies

VPN Policies

Refresh Interval (secs) Items per page Items to 2 (of 2)

#	Name	Gateway	Destinations	Crypto Suite	Enable	Configure
<input type="checkbox"/> 1	WAN GroupVPN			ESP: 3DES/HMAC SHA1 (IKE)	<input type="checkbox"/>	  
<input type="checkbox"/> 2	WLAN GroupVPN			ESP: 3DES/HMAC SHA1 (IKE)	<input type="checkbox"/>	  

Site To Site Policies: 0 Policies Defined, 0 Policies Enabled, 10 Maximum Policies Allowed
GroupVPN Policies: 2 Policies Defined, 0 Policies Enabled, 25 Maximum Policies Allowed

All defined VPN policies are displayed in the **VPN Policies** table. Each entry displays the following information:

- Name** – The default name or user-defined VPN policy name.
- Gateway** – The IP address of the remote firewall. If the wildcard IP address, 0 . 0 . 0 . 0 , is used, it is displayed as the IP address.
- Destinations** – The IP addresses of the destination networks.
- Crypto Suite** – The type of encryption used for the VPN policy.
- Enable** – Shows whether the policy is enabled. A selected check box enables the VPN Policy. Clearing the box disables it.
- Configure** – Options for managing the individual VPN policies:
 - Edit** icon allows you to edit the VPN policy.
 - Delete** icon deletes the policy on that line. The predefined GroupVPN policies cannot be deleted, so the **Delete** icons are dimmed.
 - Export** icon exports the VPN policy configuration as a file for local installation by SonicWall Global VPN Clients.

The following buttons are shown below the **VPN Policies** table:





- ADD** Accesses the **VPN Policy** window to configure site to site or tunnel interface VPN policies.
- DELETE** Deletes the selected (checked box before the VPN policy name in the **Name** column first). You cannot delete the GroupVPN policy.
- DELETE ALL** Deletes all VPN policies in the VPN Policies table except the default GroupVPN policy.

Some statistics about the VPN policies are also summarized below the table, for both site to site and GroupVPN policies:

- Number of policies defined
- Number of policies enabled
- Maximum number of policies allowed

NOTE: A VPN Policy cannot have two different WAN interfaces if the VPN Gateway IP is the same.

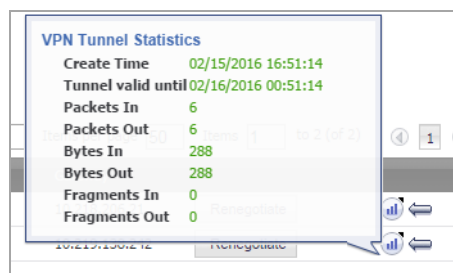
Currently Active VPN Tunnels

#	Created	Name	Local	Remote	Gateway		
1	02/09/2016 14:15:05	NSA3600	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255	10.218.200.21	Renegotiate	 
2	02/09/2016 14:15:41	TZ400	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255	10.219.138.242	Renegotiate	 

2 Currently Active VPN Tunnels

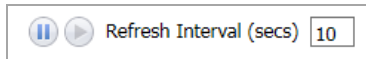
A list of currently active VPN tunnels is displayed in this section. The **Currently Active VPN Tunnels** table displays this information for each tunnel:

- Created** Date and time the tunnel was created
- Name** Name of the VPN Policy
- Local** Local LAN IP address of the tunnel
- Remote** Remote destination network IP address
- Gateway** Peer gateway IP address
- Renegotiate** button Forces the VPN Client to renegotiate the VPN tunnel when selected
- Statistics** icon When the mouse hovers over the **Statistics** icon, **VPN Tunnel Statistics** are displayed



- Left-arrow** icon When the mouse hovers over the **Left-arrow** icon, the respective VPN policy is displayed in the middle of the **VPN Policies** table

You can refresh the active tunnels by using the **Refresh Interval** options at the top of the **VPN Policies** and **Currently Active VPN Tunnels** tables:



You can set the **Refresh Interval** by specifying how often, in seconds, the tunnels refresh. Pause the refresh by clicking the **Pause** icon or start the refresh by clicking the **Start** icon.

IPv6 VPN Configuration

Site to Site VPNs can be configured for IPv6 in a similar manner to IPv4 VPNs after selecting the **IPv6** option in the **View IP Version** radio button on the **VPN > Base Settings** page.

There are certain VPN features that are currently not supported for IPv6, including:

- IKEv1 is not supported.
- GroupVPN is not supported.
- Tunnel Interface route-based VPN is not supported.
- DHCP Over VPN is not supported.
- L2TP Server is not supported.

When configuring an IPv6 VPN policy:

- On the **General** screen:
 - The **Gateways** must be configured using IPv6 addresses. FQDN is not supported.
 - Under **IKE Authentication**, IPv6 addresses can be used for the local and peer IKE IDs.
- On the **Network** screen:
 - IPv6 address objects (or address groups that contain only IPv6 address objects) must be selected for the **Local Network** and **Remote Network**.
 - **DHCP Over VPN** is not supported, thus the DHCP options for protected network are not available.
 - The **Any address** option for **Local Networks** and the **Tunnel All** option for **Remote Networks** are removed, but you can select an **all zero** IPv6 Network address object for the same functionality and behavior.
- On the **Proposals** screen, only **IKEv2 mode** is supported.
- On the **Advanced** screen, several options are disabled for IPv6 VPN policies:
 - **Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy** is disabled.
 - **Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast** is disabled.
 - **Enable Multicast** is disabled.
 - **Apply NAT Policies** is disabled.

NOTE: Because an interface may have multiple IPv6 address, sometimes the local address of the tunnel may vary periodically. If the user needs a consistent IP address, configure the **VPN policy bound to** option as an interface instead of a zone, and specify the address manually. The address must be one of the IPv6 addresses for that interface.

VPN Auto-Added Access Rule Control

When adding VPN Policies, SonicOS auto-creates non-editable Access Rules to allow the traffic to traverse the appropriate zones. Consider the following VPN Policy, where the Local Network is set to Firewalled Subnets (in this case comprising the LAN and DMZ) and the Destination Network is set to Subnet 192 . 168 . 169 . 0.

While this is generally a tremendous convenience, you might want to suppress the auto-creation of Access Rules in support of a VPN Policy. One such instance would be the case of a large hub-and-spoke VPN deployment where all the spoke sites are addresses using address spaces that can easily be supernetted. For example, to provide access to/from the LAN and DMZ at the hub site to one subnet at each of 2,000 remote sites, addressed as follows:

```
remoteSubnet0=Network 10.0.0.0/24 (mask 255.255.255.0, range 10.0.0.0-10.0.0.255)
remoteSubnet1=Network 10.0.1.0/24 (mask 255.255.255.0, range 10.0.1.0-10.0.1.255)
remoteSubnet2=Network 10.0.2.0/24 (mask 255.255.255.0, range 10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255)
remoteSubnet2000=10.7.207.0/24 (mask 255.255.255.0, range 10.7.207.0-10.7.207.255)
```

Creating VPN Policies for each of these remote sites would result in having 2,000 VPN Policies, but would also create 8,000 Access Rules (LAN -> VPN, DMZ -> VPN, VPN -> LAN, and VPN -> DMZ for each site). However, all of these Access Rules could easily be handled with just four Access Rules to a supernetted or address range representation of the remote sites (more specific allow or deny Access Rules could be added as needed):

```
remoteSubnetAll=Network 10.0.0.0/13 (mask 255.248.0.0, range 10.0.0.0-10.7.255.255) or
remoteRangeAll=Range 10.0.0.0-10.7.207.255
```

To enable this level of aggregation, the **Advanced** tab of the **VPN Policy** dialog offers the **Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy** option for site to site VPN policies. By default, the checkbox is not selected, meaning the accompanying Access Rules are created automatically, as they've always been. By selecting the checkbox when creating the VPN Policy, you have the ability and need to create custom Access Rules for the VPN traffic.

Site to Site VPNs

SonicWall VPN is based on the industry-standard IPsec VPN implementation. It provides a easy-to-setup, secure solution for connecting mobile users, telecommuters, remote offices and partners via the Internet. Mobile users, telecommuters, and other remote users with broadband (DSL or cable) or dialup Internet access can securely and easily access your network resources with the SonicWall Global VPN Client and GroupVPN on your firewall. Remote office networks can securely connect to your network using site to site VPN connections that enable network-to-network VPN connections.

The maximum number of policies you can add depends on which SonicWall model you have. The larger models allow more connections.

NOTE: Remote users must be explicitly granted access to network resources. Refer to the *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup* administration documentation for more information. Depending on how you define access, you can affect the ability of remote clients using GVC to connect to GroupVPN, but you can also affect remote users using NetExtender and SSL VPN Virtual Office bookmarks to access network resources. To allow GVC, NetExtender, or Virtual Office users to access a network resource, the network address objects or groups must be added to the allow list on the **VPN Access** window. To access this window, select the **MANAGE** view, and under **System Setup**, click **Users > Local Users & Groups > Local User > Add > VPN Access**.

This section describes site to site policies, including GroupVPN. Other sections describe auto provisioning and Tunnel Interface policies for route-based VPN. For specific details on the setting for these kinds of policies, go to the following sections:

- [VPN Auto Provisioning](#)
- [Tunnel Interface Route-Based VPN](#)

Topics:

- [Planning Site to Site Configurations](#)
- [General VPN Configuration](#)
- [Managing GroupVPN Policies](#)
- [Creating Site to Site VPN Policies](#)

Planning Site to Site Configurations

You have many options when configuring site to site VPN and can include the following options:

Branch Office (Gateway to Gateway)	A SonicWall firewall is configured to connect to another SonicWall firewall via a VPN tunnel. Or, a SonicWall firewall is configured to connect via IPsec to another manufacturer's firewall.
Hub and Spoke Design	All SonicWall VPN gateways are configured to connect to a central hub, such as a corporate firewall. The hub must have a static IP address, but the spokes can have dynamic IP addresses. If the spokes are dynamic, the hub must be a SonicWall network security appliance.
Mesh Design	All sites connect to all other sites. All sites must have static IP addresses.

SonicWall has video clips and knowledge base articles that can help you with some of those decisions.

VIDEO: Informational videos with site to site VPN configuration examples are available online. For example, see [How to Create a Site to Site VPN in Main Mode using Preshared Secret](#) or [How to Create Aggressive Mode Site to Site VPN using Preshared Secret](#). Additional videos are available at: <https://www.sonicwall.com/en-us/support/video-tutorials>.

TIP: See the knowledge base articles for information about Site to Site VPNs:

- [VPN: Types of Site to Site VPN Scenarios and Configurations \(SW12884\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting articles of Site to Site VPN \(SW7570\)](#)

When designing your VPN configurations, be sure to document all pertinent IP addressing information. You may want to create a network diagram to use as a reference. A few other things to note:

- The firewall must have a routable WAN IP address whether it is dynamic or static.
- In a VPN network with dynamic and static IP addresses, the VPN gateway with the dynamic address must initiate the VPN connection.

General VPN Configuration

This section reviews the general process for site to site configurations. Specific scenarios may be different and some are described in subsequent sections. Note that configuring IPsec VPNs for IPv4 and IPv6 are very similar; however, certain VPN features are currently not supported in IPv6. See [IPv6 VPN Configuration](#) on page 18 for information.

To configure a VPN:

- 1 Navigate to the **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings** page.
- 2 Make the appropriate selection in **View IP Version** field: either **IPv4** or **IPv6**.
- 3 In the **VPN Policies** section, click **ADD**.
- 4 Complete **General**, **Network**, **Proposals**, and **Advanced** sections on the **VPN Policy** dialog. The following sections provide additional information for each of those pages.

Topics:

- [Configuring Settings on the General Screen](#)
- [Configuring Settings on the Network Screen](#)
- [Configuring Settings on the Proposals Screen](#)
- [Configuring Settings on the Advanced Screen](#)

Configuring Settings on the General Screen

On the **General** screen, you begin defining the site to site VPN policy. There are some slight differences between IPv4 and IPv6 networks, which are noted.

IPv4 ADD VPN Policy: General

The screenshot shows the 'General' tab of a configuration window. At the top, there are four tabs: 'General' (selected), 'Network', 'Proposals', and 'Advanced'. Below the tabs is the 'Security Policy' section. It contains a 'Policy Type' dropdown menu set to 'Site to Site', an 'Authentication Method' dropdown menu set to 'IKE using Preshared Secret', and three text input fields for 'Name', 'IPsec Primary Gateway Name or Address', and 'IPsec Secondary Gateway Name or Address'. Below this is the 'IKE Authentication' section, which includes a 'Shared Secret' text input, a 'Confirm Shared Secret' text input, and a checked checkbox for 'Mask Shared Secret'. There are also two dropdown menus for 'Local IKE ID' and 'Peer IKE ID', both set to 'IPv4 Address', each followed by a text input field. At the bottom left, there is a 'Ready' status bar. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'OK', 'CANCEL', and 'HELP'.

- 1 If configuring an IPv4 VPN, select **Policy Type** from the drop-down menu.

NOTE: The **Policy Type** field is not available for IPv6.

- 2 Select the authentication method from **Authentication Method**. The remaining fields in the **General** screen change depending on which option you select.

IPv4	IPv6
Manual Key	Manual Key
IKE using Preshared Secret (default)	IKE using Preshared Secret (default)
IKE using 3rd Party Certificates	IKE using 3rd Party Certificates
SonicWall Auto Provisioning Client	
SonicWall Auto Provisioning Server	

- 3 Type in a **Name** for the policy.
- 4 For **IPsec Primary Gateway Name or Address**, type in the gateway name or address.
- 5 For **IPsec Secondary Gateway Name or Address**, type in the gateway name or address.

6 Under **IKE Authentication**, provide the required authentication information.

i **NOTE:** When configuring IKE authentication, IPv6 addresses can be used for the local and peer IKE IDs.

Configuring Settings on the Network Screen

On the **Network** screen, you define the networks that comprise the site to site VPN policy.

IPv4 ADD VPN Policy: Network

The screenshot shows the 'Network' tab of a VPN policy configuration. It is divided into two sections: 'Local Networks' and 'Remote Networks'. In the 'Local Networks' section, the 'Choose local network from list' option is selected, and a dropdown menu is set to '--Select Local Network--'. The 'Any address' option is unselected. In the 'Remote Networks' section, the 'Choose destination network from list' option is selected, with a dropdown menu set to '--Select Remote Network--'. The 'Use IKEv2 IP Pool' option is unselected, and its dropdown menu is set to '--Select IP Pool Network--'. The 'Use this VPN Tunnel as default route for all Internet traffic' option is also unselected.

On the **Network** screen of the VPN policy, select the local and remote networks from the **Local Network** and **Remote Network** options.

For IPv6, the drop-down menus are the only option provided and only address objects that can be used by IPv6 are listed. Since DHCP is not supported, those options are not available. Also the **Any address** option for **Local Networks** and the **Tunnel All** option for **Remote Networks** are removed. An all-zero IPv6 Network address object could be selected for the same functionality and behavior.

For IPv4, additional options are provided. Under **Local Networks**, you can **Choose local network from list** or choose **Any address**. If **Any address** is selected, auto-added rules are created between Trusted Zones and the VPN zone

For IPv4 under **Remote Networks**, you can choose one of the following:

- **Use this VPN tunnel as default route for all Internet traffic.**
- **Choose destination network from list.** If none are listed you can create a new address object or address group.
- **Use IKEv2 IP Pool.** Select this to support IKEv2 Config Payload.

Configuring Settings on the Proposals Screen

On the **Proposals** screen, you define the security parameters for your VPN policy. The page is same for IPv4 and IPv6, but the options are different depending on what you selected. IPv4 offers both IKEv1 and IKEv2 options in the **Exchange** field, whereas IPv6 only has IKEv2.

The screenshot shows the 'Proposals' tab selected in a configuration interface. It is divided into two main sections:

- IKE (Phase 1) Proposal:**
 - Exchange: IKEv2 Mode
 - DH Group: Group 2
 - Encryption: AES-128
 - Authentication: SHA1
 - Life Time (seconds): 28800
- Ipsec (Phase 2) Proposal:**
 - Protocol: ESP
 - Encryption: AES-128
 - Authentication: SHA1
 - Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy
 - Life Time (seconds): 28800

Configuring Settings on the Advanced Screen

The **Advanced** screens for IPv4 and IPv6 are similar, but some options are available only for one version or the other, as shown in [Advanced Settings: Option Availability](#). Options also change depending on the authentication method selected.

Advanced Settings: Option Availability

Option	IP Version	
	IPv4	IPv6
Enable Keep Alive	Supported	Supported
Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy	Supported	–
Disable IPsec Anti-Replay	Supported	Supported
Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast	Supported	–
Enable Multicast	Supported	–
Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only	Supported	Supported
Apply NAT Policies	Supported	–
Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management	Supported	Supported
Using Primary IP Address	–	Supported
Specify the local gateway IP address	–	Supported
Preempt Secondary Gateway	Supported	Supported
Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds)	Supported	–

NOTE: Because an interface may have multiple IPv6 address, sometimes the local address of the tunnel may vary periodically. If a user needs a consistent IP address, select either the **Using Primary IP Address** or **Specify the local gateway IP address** option, or configure the VPN policy to be bound to an interface instead of a Zone. With **Specify the local gateway IP address**, specify the address manually. The address must be one of the IPv6 addresses for that interface.

IPv6 ADD VPN Policy: Advanced

General
Network
Proposals
Advanced

Advanced Settings

- Enable Keep Alive
- Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy
- Disable IPsec Anti-Replay
- Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast
- Enable Multicast
- Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only
- Apply NAT Policies
- Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management

Management via this SA: HTTPS SSH SNMP

User login via this SA: HTTP HTTPS

Default LAN Gateway (optional):

VPN Policy bound to: Zone WAN

Using Primary IP Address

Specify the local gateway IP address

Preempt Secondary Gateway

Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds)

IKEv2 Settings

- Do not send trigger packet during IKE SA negotiation
- Accept Hash & URL Certificate Type
- Send Hash & URL Certificate Type

IPv4 ADD VPN Policy: Advanced

General **Network** **Proposals** **Advanced**

Advanced Settings

- Enable Keep Alive
- Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy
- Disable IPsec Anti-Replay
- Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast
- Enable Multicast
- Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only
- Apply NAT Policies
- Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management

Management via this SA: HTTPS SSH SNMP

User login via this SA: HTTP HTTPS

Default LAN Gateway (optional):

VPN Policy bound to:

Preempt Secondary Gateway

Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds)

Managing GroupVPN Policies

The GroupVPN feature provides automatic VPN policy provisioning for Global VPN Clients (GVC). The GroupVPN feature on the SonicWall network security appliance and GVC streamlines VPN deployment and management. Using the Client Policy Provisioning technology, you define the VPN policies for GVC users. This policy information downloads automatically from the firewall (VPN Gateway) to GVC, saving remote users the burden of provisioning VPN connections.

GroupVPN policies facilitate the set up and deployment of multiple Global VPN Clients by the firewall administrator. **GroupVPN** is only available for GVC and you should use XAUTH/RADIUS or third party certificates in conjunction with it for added security. For more information on how to create GroupVPN policies for any zones, refer to the *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup* administration documentation, or navigate to the **MANAGE** view, under **System Setup**, and select **Network > Zones > Add**.

SonicOS provides default **GroupVPN** policies for the WAN zone and the WLAN zone, as these are generally the less trusted zones. These default GroupVPN policies are listed in the **VPN Policies** table on the **VPN > Base Settings** page and can be customized:

- WAN GroupVPN
- WLAN GroupVPN

TIP: For information about Group VPN and Global VPN Client, refer to *Types of Group VPN/Global VPN Client Scenarios and Configurations (SW7411)*.

Topics:

- [Configuring IKE Using a Preshared Secret Key](#)
- [Configuring IKE Using 3rd Party Certificates](#)
- [Exporting a GroupVPN Client Policy](#)

Configuring IKE Using a Preshared Secret Key

To configure the WAN GroupVPN using a preshared secret key:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings**.
- 2 Click the **Edit** icon for the **WAN GroupVPN** policy.

The screenshot shows the 'Security Policy' configuration page. At the top, there are four tabs: 'General' (selected), 'Proposals', 'Advanced', and 'Client'. Below the tabs, the 'Authentication Method' is set to 'IKE using Preshared Secret'. The 'Name' field contains 'WAN GroupVPN' and the 'Shared Secret' field contains '722145736C3130C8'.

On the **General** screen, **IKE using Preshared Secret** is the default setting for **Authentication Method**. A shared secret code is automatically generated by the firewall and written in the **Shared Secret** field. You can generate your own shared secret. A self-defined shared secret code must be a minimum of four characters.

NOTE: You cannot change the name of any GroupVPN policy.

- 3 Click **Proposals** to continue the configuration process.

The screenshot shows the 'IKE (Phase 1) Proposal' configuration page. At the top, there are four tabs: 'General', 'Proposals' (selected), 'Advanced', and 'Client'. Below the tabs, the 'DH Group' is set to 'Group 2', 'Encryption' is '3DES', and 'Authentication' is 'SHA1'. The 'Life Time (seconds)' is '28800'. Below this, the 'Ipssec (Phase 2) Proposal' section is visible, with 'Protocol' set to 'ESP', 'Encryption' to '3DES', and 'Authentication' to 'SHA1'. There is an unchecked checkbox for 'Enable Perfect Forward Security' and a 'Life Time (seconds)' field set to '28800'.

- 4 In the **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal** section, select the following settings:

- Select **Group 2** (default) from the **DH Group** drop-down menu.

NOTE: The Windows XP L2TP client only works with DH Group 2.

- In the **Encryption** drop-down menu, select **DES**, **3DES** (default), **AES-128**, **AES-192**, or **AES-256**.
- From the **Authentication** drop-down menu, select the desired authentication method: **MD5**, **SHA1** (default), **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512**.

- In the **Life Time (seconds)** field, enter a value. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.
- 5 In the **IPsec (Phase 2) Proposal** section, select the following settings:
- From the **Protocol** drop-down menu, select **ESP** (default).
 - In the **Encryption** drop-down menu, select **DES, 3DES** (default), **AES-128**, **AES-192**, or **AES-256**.
 - In the **Authentication** drop-down menu, select the desired authentication method: **MD5**, **SHA1** (default), **SHA256**, **SHA384**, **SHA512**, **AES-XCBC**, or **None**.
 - Check **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy** if you want an additional Diffie-Hellman key exchange as an added layer of security.
 - Enter a value in the **Life Time (seconds)** field. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.
- 6 Click **Advanced**.

The screenshot shows the configuration interface with tabs for General, Proposals, Advanced, and Client. The **Advanced Settings** section includes:

- Disable IPsec Anti-Replay
- Enable Multicast
- Accept Multiple Proposals for Clients
- Enable IKE Mode Configuration

Management via this SA: HTTPS SSH SNMP

Default Gateway:

The **Client Authentication** section includes:

- Require authentication of VPN clients by XAUTH
- User group for XAUTH users:
- Allow Unauthenticated VPN Client Access:

- 7 Select any of the following optional settings you want to apply to your GroupVPN policy:

Advanced Settings

Disable IPsec Anti-Replay	Stops packets with duplicate sequence numbers from being dropped.
Enable Multicast	Enables IP multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video applications, to pass through the VPN tunnel.
Accept Multiple Proposals for Clients	Allows multiple proposals for clients, such as the IKE (Phase 1) Proposal or the IKE (Phase 2) Proposal, to be accepted.
Enable IKE Mode Configuration	Allows SonicOS to assign internal IP address, DNS Server, or WINS Server to third-party clients, like iOS devices or Avaya IP phones.
Management via this SA:	If using the VPN policy to manage the firewall, select the management method, either HTTP , SSH , or HTTPS . NOTE: SSH is valid for IPv4 only.

Default Gateway

Allows you to specify the IP address of the default network route for incoming IPsec packets for this VPN policy. Incoming packets are decoded by the firewall and compared to static routes configured in the firewall.

As packets can have any IP address destination, it is impossible to configure enough static routes to handle the traffic. For packets received via an IPsec tunnel, the firewall looks up a route. If no route is found, the security appliance checks for a Default Gateway. If a Default Gateway is detected, the packet is routed through the gateway. Otherwise, the packet is dropped.

Client Authentication

Require Authentication of VPN Clients by XAUTH

Requires that all inbound traffic on this VPN tunnel is from an authenticated user. Unauthenticated traffic is not allowed on the VPN tunnel. The **Trusted users** group is selected by default. You can select another user group or **Everyone from User Group for XAUTH users** from the **User group for XAUTH users** menu.

Allow Unauthenticated VPN Client Access

Allows you to enable unauthenticated VPN client access. If you clear **Require Authentication of VPN Clients by XAUTH**, the **Allow Unauthenticated VPN Client Access** menu is activated. Select an Address Object or Address Group from menu of predefined options, or select **Create new address object** or **Create new address group** to create a new one.

8 Click **Client**.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for the Client tab. At the top, there are four tabs: General, Proposals, Advanced, and Client (which is selected and highlighted in blue). Below the tabs, the page is divided into three sections:

- User Name and Password Caching:** A label "Cache XAUTH User Name and Password on Client:" is followed by a dropdown menu set to "Never".
- Client Connections:** A label "Virtual Adapter settings:" is followed by a dropdown menu set to "None". Below this, a label "Allow Connections to:" is followed by a dropdown menu set to "Split Tunnels". There are two checkboxes: "Set Default Route as this Gateway" (unchecked) and "Apply VPN Access Control List" (unchecked).
- Client Initial Provisioning:** A checkbox "Use Default Key for Simple Client Provisioning" is unchecked.

9 Select any of the following settings you want to apply to your GroupVPN policy.

User Name and Password Caching

Cache XAUTH User Name and Password on Client

Allows the Global VPN Client to cache the user name and password:

- If **Never** is selected, the Global VPN Client is not allowed to cache the username and password. The user is prompted for a username and password when the connection is enabled and also every time there is an IKE Phase 1 rekey. This is the default.
 - If **Single Session** is selected, the Global VPN Client user is prompted for username and password each time the connection is enabled and is valid until the connection is disabled. The username and password is used through IKE Phase 1 rekey.
 - If **Always** is selected Global VPN Client user prompted for username and password only once when the connection is enabled. When prompted, the user is given the option of caching the username and password.
-

Client Connections

Virtual Adapter Settings

The use of the Virtual Adapter by the Global VPN Client (GVC) is dependent upon a DHCP server, either the internal SonicOS or a specified external DHCP server, to allocate addresses to the Virtual Adapter.

In instances where predictable addressing is a requirement, obtain the MAC address of the Virtual Adapter and to create a DHCP lease reservation. To reduce the administrative burden of providing predictable Virtual Adapter addressing, you can configure the GroupVPN to accept static addressing of the Virtual Adapter's IP configuration.

NOTE: This feature requires the use of SonicWall GVC.

Select one of the following:

- Choose **None** if a Virtual Adapter is not used by this GroupVPN connection. This is the default.
 - Choose **DHCP Lease** if the Virtual Adapter obtains its IP configuration from the DHCP Server only, as configured in the **VPN > DHCP over VPN** page.
 - Choose **DHCP Lease or Manual Configuration** when the GVC connects to the firewall, the policy from the firewall instructs the GVC to use a Virtual Adapter, but the DHCP messages are suppressed if the Virtual Adapter has been manually configured. The configured value is recorded by the firewall so it can proxy ARP for the manually assigned IP address. By design, the Virtual Adapter currently has no limitations on IP address assignments. Only duplicate static addresses are not permitted.
-

Allow Connections to

Client network traffic that matches the destination networks of each gateway is sent through the VPN tunnel of that specific gateway. Select one of the following:

- **This Gateway Only** allows a single connection to be enabled at a time. Traffic that matches the destination networks as specified in the policy of the gateway is sent through the VPN tunnel. If this option is selected with **Set Default Route as this Gateway**, then the internet traffic is also sent through the VPN tunnel. If selected without selecting **Set Default Route as this Gateway**, then the Internet traffic is blocked.
- **All Secured Gateways** allows one or more connections to be enabled at the same time. Traffic matching the destination networks of each gateway is sent through the VPN tunnel of that specific gateway. If this option is selected along with **Set Default Route as this Gateway**, Internet traffic is also sent through the VPN tunnel. If this option is selected along without **Set Default Route as this Gateway**, the internet traffic is blocked. Only one of the multiple gateways can have **Set Default Route as this Gateway** enabled.
- **Split Tunnels** allows the VPN user to have both local internet connectivity and VPN connectivity. This is the default.

Set Default Route as this Gateway	Select this checkbox if all remote VPN connections access the internet through this VPN tunnel. You can only configure one VPN policy to use this setting. By default, this option is not enabled.
Apply VPN Access Control List	Select this checkbox to apply the VPN access control list. When this option is enabled, specified users can access only those networks configured for them (for more information, refer to System Setup Users > Local Users & Groups in <i>SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup</i>). This option is not enabled by default.
Client Initial Provisioning	
Use Default Key for Simple Client Provisioning	Uses Aggressive mode for the initial exchange with the gateway, and VPN clients uses a default Preshared Key for authentication. This option is not enabled by default.

10 Click **OK**.

11 Click **ACCEPT** on the **VPN > Base Settings** page to update the VPN Policies.

Configuring IKE Using 3rd Party Certificates

IMPORTANT: Before configuring GroupVPN with IKE using 3rd Party Certificates, your certificates must be installed on the firewall.

To configure GroupVPN with IKE using 3rd Party Certificates:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings**.
- 2 Click the **Edit** icon for the **WAN GroupVPN** policy.

- In the **Security Policy** section, select **IKE using 3rd Party Certificates** from the **Authentication Method** drop-down menu.

The screenshot shows the SonicWall configuration interface for a Security Policy. It has four tabs: General, Proposals, Advanced, and Client. The 'General' tab is active. The 'Security Policy' section includes:

- Authentication Method:** IKE using 3rd Party Certificates
- Name:** WAN GroupVPN
- Gateway Certificate:** - No verified third party certs -

 The 'Peer Certificates' section includes:

- Peer ID Type:** Distinguished name
- Peer ID Filter:** (empty text box)
- Allow Only Peer Certificates Signed by Gateway Issuer

NOTE: The VPN policy name is **WAN GroupVPN** by default and cannot be changed.

- Select a certificate for the firewall from the **Gateway Certificate** drop-down menu.
If you didn't download your 3rd-party certificates before starting this procedure, the **Gateway Certificates** field shows **- No verified third party certs -**.
- In the **Peer Certificates** section, select one of the following from the **Peer ID Type** drop-down menu:

Distinguished Name	Based on the certificate's Subject Distinguished Name field and the format is set by the issuing Certificate Authority.
E-mail ID	E-mail ID and Domain ID are based on the certificate's Subject Alternative Name field, which is not contained on all certificates by default. If the certificate does not contain a Subject Alternative Name field, this filter does not work.
Domain ID	

- Enter the Peer ID filter in the **Peer ID Filter** field.
The **Email ID** and **Domain Name** filters can contain a string or partial string identifying the acceptable range required. The strings entered are not case sensitive and can contain the wild card characters * (for more than 1 character) and ? (for a single character). For example, when **Email ID** is selected, the string ***@sonicwall.com** allows anyone with an email address that ended in **@sonicwall.com** to have access; when **Domain Name** is selected, the string ***sv.us.sonicwall.com** allows anyone with a domain name that ended in **sv.us.sonicwall.com** to have access.
- Select **Allow Only Peer Certificates Signed by Gateway Issuer** to specify that peer certificates must be signed by the issuer specified in the **Gateway Certificate** menu.

8 Click **Proposals**.

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for VPN proposals. At the top, there are four tabs: General, Proposals (selected), Advanced, and Client. Below the tabs, the 'IKE (Phase 1) Proposal' section is expanded, showing the following settings: DH Group (Group 2), Encryption (3DES), Authentication (SHA1), and Life Time (seconds) (28800). Below this, the 'IPsec (Phase 2) Proposal' section is also expanded, showing: Protocol (ESP), Encryption (3DES), Authentication (SHA1), a checkbox for 'Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy' which is unchecked, and Life Time (seconds) (28800).

9 In the **IKE (Phase 1)** section, select:

- a For **DH Group**, select **Group 1**, **Group 2** (default), **Group 5**, or **Group 14**.
- b For **Encryption**, select **DES**, **3DES** (default), **AES-128**, **AES-192**, or **AES-256**.
- c For **Authentication**, select the desired authentication method: **MD5**, **SHA1** (default), **SHA256**, **SHA384**, **SHA512**, **AES-XCBC**, or **None**.
- d In the **Life Time (seconds)** field, enter a value. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.

10 In the **IPsec (Phase 2)** section, select the following settings:

- a For **Protocol**, select **ESP** (default).
- b For **Encryption**, select **3DES** (default), **AES-128**, **AES-192**, or **AES-256**.
- c For **Authentication**, select the desired authentication method: **MD5**, **SHA1** (default), **SHA256**, **SHA384**, **SHA512**, **AES-XCBC**, or **None**.
- d Select **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy** if you want an additional Diffie-Hellman key exchange as an added layer of security.
- e Enter a value in the **Life Time (seconds)** field. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.

11 Click **Advanced**.

12 Select any of the following optional settings that you want to apply to your GroupVPN Policy:

Disable IPsec Anti-Replay	Anti-Replay is a form of partial sequence integrity and it detects arrival of duplicated I datagrams (within a constrained window).
Enable Multicast	Enables IP multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video applications, to pass through the VPN tunnel.
Accept Multiple Proposal fro Clients	Allows multiple proposals for clients, such as the IKE (Phase 1) Proposal or the IKE (Phase 2) Proposal, to be accepted.
Enable IKE Mode Configuration	Allows SonicOS to assign internal IP address, DNS Server or WINS Server to Third Party Clients like iOS devices or Avaya IP Phones.
Management via this SA	If using the VPN policy to manage the firewall, select one or more management methods, HTTP , SSH , or HTTPS . NOTE: SSH is valid for IPv4 only.
Default Gateway	Used at a central site in conjunction with a remote site using the Route all Internet traffic through this SA check box. Default LAN Gateway allows you to specify the IP address of the default LAN route for incoming IPsec packets for this SA. Incoming packets are decoded by the firewall and compared to static routes configured in the firewall. Since packets can have any IP address destination, it is impossible to configure enough static routes to handle the traffic. For packets received via an IPsec tunnel, the firewall looks up a route for the LAN. If no route is found, the firewall checks for a Default LAN Gateway. If a Default LAN Gateway is detected, the packet is routed through the gateway. Otherwise, the packet is dropped.
Enable OCSP Checking and OCSP Responder URL	Enables use of Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) to check VPN certificate status and specifies the URL where to check certificate status.

Require Authentication of VPN Clients via XAUTH	Requires that all inbound traffic on this VPN policy is from an authenticated user. Unauthenticated traffic is not allowed on the VPN tunnel.
User group for XAUTH users	Allows you to select a defined user group for authentication.
Allow Unauthenticated VPN Client Access	Allows you to specify network segments for unauthenticated Global VPN Client access.

13 Click **Client**.

General
Proposals
Advanced
Client

User Name and Password Caching

Cache XAUTH User Name and Password on Client: Never

Client Connections

Virtual Adapter settings: None

Allow Connections to: Split Tunnels

Set Default Route as this Gateway

Apply VPN Access Control List

Client Initial Provisioning

Use Default Key for Simple Client Provisioning

14 Select any of the following boxes that you want to apply to Global VPN Client provisioning:

Cache XAUTH User Name and Password	<p>Allows the Global VPN Client to cache the user name and password:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Choose Never to prohibit Global VPN Client from caching username and password. The user will be prompted for a username and password when the connection is enabled and also every time there is an IKE phase 1 rekey.• Choose Single Session to prompt the user for username and password each time the connection is enabled, which will be valid until the connection is disabled. This username and password is used through IKE phase 1 rekey.• Choose Always to prompt the user for username and password only once when the connection is enabled. When prompted, the user is given the option of caching the username and password.
---	---

Virtual Adapter Settings	<p>The use of the Virtual Adapter by the Global VPN Client (GVC) is dependent upon a DHCP server, either the internal SonicOS or a specified external DHCP server, to allocate addresses to the Virtual Adapter.</p> <p>In instances where predictable addressing was a requirement, obtain the MAC address of the Virtual Adapter, and to create a DHCP lease reservation. To reduce the administrative burden of providing predictable Virtual Adapter addressing, configure the GroupVPN to accept static addressing of the Virtual Adapter's IP configuration. This feature requires the use of SonicWall GVC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Choose None to not use the Virtual Adapter by this GroupVPN connection.• Choose DHCP Lease to have the Virtual Adapter obtain its IP configuration from the DHCP Server only, as configured in the VPN > DHCP over VPN page.• Choose DHCP Lease or Manual Configuration and when the GVC connects to the firewall, the policy from the firewall instructs the GVC to use a Virtual Adapter, but the DHCP messages are suppressed if the Virtual Adapter has been manually configured. The configured value is recorded by the firewall so that it can proxy ARP for the manually assigned IP address. By design, IP address assignments currently has no limitations on for the Virtual Adapter. Only duplicate static addresses are not permitted.
---------------------------------	---

Allow Connections to

Client network traffic that matches the destination networks of each gateway is sent through the VPN tunnel of that specific gateway. Select one of the following options:

- **This Gateway Only** allows a single connection to be enabled at a time. Traffic that matches the destination networks as specified in the policy of the gateway is sent through the VPN tunnel.

If this option is selected with **Set Default Route as this Gateway**, then the internet traffic is also sent through the VPN tunnel. If selected without selecting **Set Default Route as this Gateway**, then the Internet traffic is blocked.

- **All Secured Gateways** allows one or more connections to be enabled at the same time. Traffic matching the destination networks of each gateway is sent through the VPN tunnel of that specific gateway.

If this option is selected along with **Set Default Route as this Gateway**, Internet traffic is also sent through the VPN tunnel. If this option is selected along without **Set Default Route as this Gateway**, the internet traffic is blocked. Only one of the multiple gateways can have **Set Default Route as this Gateway** enabled.

NOTE: Only one of the multiple gateways can have **Set Default Route as this Gateway** enabled.

- **Split Tunnels** allows the VPN user to have both local internet connectivity and VPN connectivity. This is the default.

Set Default Route as this Gateway	Enable this option if all remote VPN connections access the Internet through this SA. You can only configure one SA to use this setting.
Apply VPN Access Control List	Enable this option to control client connections with an access control list.
Use Default Key for Simple Client Provisioning	Uses Aggressive mode for the initial exchange with the gateway and VPN clients uses a default Preshared Key for authentication.

15 Click **OK**.

16 Click **ACCEPT** on the **VPN > Base Settings** page to update the VPN Policies.

Exporting a GroupVPN Client Policy

You can provide a file to your end users that contains configuration settings for their Global VPN clients. Simply export the GroupVPN client policy from the firewall.

IMPORTANT: The GroupVPN SA (Secure Association) must be enabled on the firewall to export a configuration file.

To export the Global VPN Client configuration settings:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings**.
- 2 Be sure the policy you want to export is enabled.

- 3 Click the **Export** icon in the **Configure** column for the GroupVPN entry in the **VPN Policies** table.

Exporting the VPN Policy to a file will save it on your local hard drive.

You may save the file in *spd* or *rcf* format:

spd format is required for VPN Clients 8.x and earlier.

rcf format is required for Global VPN Clients.

Files saved in *rcf* format may be password encrypted.

Files saved in *spd* format are not encrypted.

If you are using pre-shared key, the shared secret is not exported to *spd* files.

You must add the pre-shared key to the policy when imported by the SonicWall VPN Client.

The name of the file will be **WAN GroupVPN_18B16908F570** by default; this can be changed if needed.

The Connection name for this Policy will be WAN GroupVPN_18B16908F570.

Are you sure you want to export this Policy ?

rcf format is required for SonicWall Global VPN Clients is the default. Files saved in the *rcf* format can be password encrypted. The firewall provides a default file name for the configuration file, which you can change.

- 4 Click **Yes**.

VPN Access Networks

Select the Client Access Network(s) you wish to export:

--Select Local Network--

VPN Policy Export Password

You may encrypt the exported file using a chosen password.

If you do not choose a password, the exported file will not be encrypted.

If the VPN Policy uses a pre-shared key, it will be exported regardless of encryption.

Password:

Confirm Password:

- 5 In the drop-down list for **Select the client Access Network(s) you wish to export**, select **VPN Access Network**.
- 6 Type a password in the **Password** field and reenter it in the **Confirm Password** field, if you want to encrypt the exported file. If you choose not to enter a password, the exported file is not encrypted.
- 7 Click **SUBMIT**. If you did not enter a password, a message appears confirming your choice.
- 8 Click **OK**. You can change the configuration file before saving.
- 9 Save the file.

10 Click **Close**.

The file can be saved or sent electronically to remote users to configure their Global VPN Clients.

Creating Site to Site VPN Policies

A site to site VPN allows offices in multiple locations to establish secure connections with each other over a public network. It extends the company's network, making computer resources from one location available to employees at other locations.

You can create or modify existing site to site VPN policies. To add a policy, click **ADD** under the **VPN Policies** table; to modify an existing policy click the **Edit** icon for that policy. The following options can be set up when configuring a site to site VPN:

- [Configuring with a Preshared Secret Key](#)
- [Configuring with a Third Party Certificate](#)

This section also contains information on how to configure the remote SonicWall firewall and how to configure a static route to act as a failover in case the VPN tunnel failure.

- [Configuring the Remote SonicWall Network Security Appliance](#)
- [Configuring VPN Failover to a Static Route.](#)

VIDEO: Informational videos with site to site VPN configuration examples are available online. For example, see [How to Create a Site to Site VPN in Main Mode using Preshared Secret](#) or [How to Create Aggressive Mode Site to Site VPN using Preshared Secret](#). Additional videos are available at: <https://www.sonicwall.com/en-us/support/video-tutorials>.

Configuring with a Preshared Secret Key

To configure a VPN Policy using Internet Key Exchange (IKE) with a preshared secret key:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings**.

- 2 Click **ADD** to create a new policy or click the **Edit** icon if you are updating an existing policy.

General Network Proposals Advanced

Security Policy

Policy Type:

Authentication Method:

Name:

IPsec Primary Gateway Name or Address:

IPsec Secondary Gateway Name or Address:

IKE Authentication

Shared Secret:

Confirm Shared Secret: Mask Shared Secret

Local IKE ID:

Peer IKE ID:

Ready

OK CANCEL HELP

- 3 From **Policy Type** under **General**, **Site to Site**.
- 4 From **Authentication Method**, select **IKE using Preshared Secret**.
- 5 Enter a name for the policy in the **Name** field.
- 6 Enter the host name or IP address of the remote connection in the **IPsec Primary Gateway Name or Address** field.
- 7 If the Remote VPN device supports more than one endpoint, enter a second host name or IP address of the remote connection in the **IPsec Secondary Gateway Name or Address** field (optional).
- 8 In the **IKE Authentication** section, in the **Shared Secret** and **Confirm Shared Secret** fields, enter a Shared Secret password. This is used to be used to setup the SA (Security Association). The Shared Secret password must be at least 4 characters long, and should include both numbers and letters.
- 9 To see the shared secret key in both fields, clear the checkbox for **Mask Shared Secret**. By default, **Mask Shared Secret** is selected, which causes the shared secret key to be displayed as black circles.
- 10 Optionally, specify a **Local IKE ID** and **Peer IKE ID** for this Policy.

You can select from the following IDs from the drop-down menu:

- **IPv4 Address**
- **Domain Name**
- **E-mail Address**
- **Firewall Identifier**

- **Key Identifier**

By default, the **IP Address** (ID_IPv4_ADDR) is used for Main Mode negotiations, and the firewall Identifier (ID_USER_FQDN) is used for Aggressive Mode.

- 11 Enter the address, name, or ID in the **Local IKE ID** and **Peer IKE ID** fields.
- 12 Click **Network**.

- 13 Under **Local Networks**, select one of the following:

Choose local network from list	Select a local network from the drop-down menu if a specific network can access the VPN tunnel.
Any address	Use this option if traffic can originate from any local network or if a peer has Use this VPN tunnel as default route for all Internet traffic selected. Auto-added rules are created between Trusted Zones and the VPN Zone. NOTE: DHCP over VPN is not supported with IKEv2.

- 14 Under **Remote Networks**, select one of the following:

Use this VPN Tunnel as default route for all Internet traffic	Select this option if traffic from any local user cannot leave the firewall unless it is encrypted. NOTE: You can only configure one SA to use this setting.
Choose Destination network from list	Select a remote network from the drop-down menu.
Use IKEv2 IP Pool	Select this option to support IKEv2 Config Payload. NOTE: This option is only available if IKEv2 Mode is selected on the Proposals screen.

15 Click **Proposals**.

16 Under **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal**, choose one of the following options from the **Exchange** drop-down menu:

Main Mode	Uses IKEv1 Phase 1 proposals with IPsec Phase 2 proposals. Suite B cryptography options are available for the DH Group in IKE Phase 1 settings, and for Encryption in the IPsec Phase 2 settings.
Aggressive Mode	Generally used when WAN addressing is dynamically assigned. Uses IKEv1 Phase 1 proposals with IPsec Phase 2 proposals. Suite B cryptography options are available for the DH Group in IKE Phase 1 settings, and for Encryption in the IPsec Phase 2 settings.
IKEv2 Mode	Causes all negotiation to happen via IKEv2 protocols, rather than using IKEv1 phase 1. NOTE: If you select IKE v2 Mode , both ends of the VPN tunnel must use IKE v2. When selected, the DH Group , Encryption , and Authentication fields are disabled.

17 Under **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal**, set the values for the remaining options. The default values for **DH Group**, **Encryption**, **Authentication**, and **Life Time** are acceptable for most VPN configurations.

i **NOTE:** If **IKEv2 Mode** is selected for the **Exchange** field, the **DH Group**, **Encryption**, and **Authentication** fields are grayed out and no selection can be made for those options.

i **IMPORTANT:** Be sure the Phase 1 values on the opposite side of the tunnel are configured to match.

- a For the **DH Group**, when in **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode**, you can select from several Diffie Hellman exchanges:

Diffie-Hellman Groups Included in Suite B Cryptography	Other Diffie-Hellman Options
256-bit Random ECP Group	Group 1

384-bit Random ECP Group	Group 2
521-bit Random ECP Group	Group 5
192-bit Random ECP Group	Group 14
224-bit Random ECP Group	

- b For the **Encryption** field, if **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode** was selected, choose **3DES**, **DES**, **AES-128** (default), **AES-192**, or **AES-256** from the drop-down menu.
- c For the **Authentication** field, if **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode** was selected, choose **SHA1** (default), **MD5**, **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512** for enhanced authentication security.
- d For all **Exchange** modes, enter a value for **Life Time (seconds)**. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.

18 Set the options in the **IPsec (Phase 2) Proposal** section. The default values for **Protocol**, **Encryption**, **Authentication**, **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy**, and **Life Time (seconds)** are acceptable for most VPN SA configurations.

i **NOTE:** Be sure the Phase 2 values on the opposite side of the tunnel are configured to match.

- If you selected **ESP** in the **Protocol** field, then in the **Encryption** field you can select from six encryption algorithms that are included in Suite B cryptography:

Suite B Cryptography Options	Other Options
AESGCM16-128	DES
AESGCM16-192	3DES
AESGCM16-256	AES-128
AESGMAC-128	AES-192
AESGMAC-192	AES-256
AESGMAC-256	

- If you selected **AH** in the **Protocol** field, the **Encryption** field is grayed out, and you cannot select any options.

19 Click **Advanced**.

20 Select any of the optional settings you want to apply to your VPN policy. The options change depending on options you selected in **Proposals**.

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode (See Advanced Settings for Main & Aggressive Modes)	IKEv2 Mode (See Advanced Settings for IKEv2 Mode)
Enable Keep Alive	Select to use heartbeat messages between peers on this VPN tunnel if one end of the tunnel fails, using a keep-alive heartbeat allows automatic renegotiation of the tunnel once both sides are available again without having to wait for the proposed Life Time to expire. NOTE: The Keep Alive option is disabled when the VPN policy is configured as a central gateway for DHCP over VPN or with a primary gateway name or address 0.0.0.0.	Cannot be selected for IKEv2 mode.
Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy	When <i>not</i> selected (default), accompanying Access Rules are created automatically. See VPN Auto-Added Access Rule Control on page 19 for more information.	When <i>not</i> selected (default), accompanying Access Rules are created automatically. See VPN Auto-Added Access Rule Control on page 19 for more information.
Disable IPsec Anti-Replay	Anti-replay is a form of partial sequence integrity and it detects arrival of duplicate IP datagrams (within a constrained window)	Anti-replay is a form of partial sequence integrity and it detects arrival of duplicate IP datagrams (within a constrained window)
Require authentication of VPN clients by XAUTH	Requires that all inbound traffic on this VPN policy is from a user authenticated by XAUTH/RADIUS. Unauthenticated traffic is not allowed on the VPN tunnel.	Not available in IKEv2 Mode.
Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast	Select to allow access to remote network resources by browsing the Windows Network Neighborhood.	Select to allow access to remote network resources by browsing the Windows Network Neighborhood.
Enable Multicast	Select to allow multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video application, to pass through the VPN tunnel.	Select to allow multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video application, to pass through the VPN tunnel.
Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only	Select if you want to show only the Suite B compliant algorithms.	Select if you want to show only the Suite B compliant algorithms.

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode (See Advanced Settings for Main & Aggressive Modes)	IKEv2 Mode (See Advanced Settings for IKEv2 Mode)
Apply NAT Policies	<p>Select if you want the firewall to translate traffic going over the Local network, Remote network, or both networks that are communicating via the VPN tunnel. When selected, choose a Translated Local Network or a Translated Remote Network or one of each from the two drop-down menus.</p> <p>NOTE: Generally, if NAT is required on a tunnel, either Local or Remote should be translated, but not both. Apply NAT Policies is particularly useful in cases where both sides of a tunnel use either the same or overlapping subnets.</p>	<p>Select if you want the firewall to translate traffic going over the Local network, Remote network, or both networks that are communicating via the VPN tunnel. When selected, choose a Translated Local Network or a Translated Remote Network or one of each from the two drop-down menus.</p> <p>NOTE: Generally, if NAT is required on a tunnel, either Local or Remote should be translated, but not both. Apply NAT Policies is particularly useful in cases where both sides of a tunnel use either the same or overlapping subnets.</p>
Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management	Select if you want to allow Layer 3 management.	Select if you want to allow Layer 3 management.
Management via this SA	Select any of HTTPS , SSH , or SNMP for this option to manage the local SonicWall firewall through the VPN tunnel.	Select any of HTTPS , SSH , or SNMP for this option to manage the local SonicWall firewall through the VPN tunnel.
User login via this SA	<p>Select HTTP, HTTPS, or both to allow users to log in through the VPN tunnel.</p> <p>NOTE: HTTP user login is not allowed with remote authentication.</p>	<p>Select HTTP, HTTPS, or both to allow users to log in through the VPN tunnel.</p> <p>NOTE: HTTP user login is not allowed with remote authentication.</p>
Default LAN Gateway (optional)	If you want to route traffic that is destined for an unknown subnet through a LAN before entering this tunnel, select this option. For example, if you selected Use this VPN Tunnel as a default route for all internet traffic (on the Network screen, under Remote Networks) enter the router address.	If you want to route traffic that is destined for an unknown subnet through a LAN before entering this tunnel, select this option. For example, if you selected Use this VPN Tunnel as a default route for all internet traffic (on the Network screen, under Remote Networks) enter the router address.

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode (See Advanced Settings for Main & Aggressive Modes)	IKEv2 Mode (See Advanced Settings for IKEv2 Mode)
VPN Policy bound to	<p>Select an interface or zone from the drop-down list. Zone WAN is the preferred setting if you are using WAN load balancing and you want the VPN to use either WAN interface.</p> <p>Important: Two different WAN interfaces cannot be selected from the drop-down list if the VPN Gateway IP address is the same for both.</p>	<p>Select an interface or zone from the drop-down list. Zone WAN is the preferred setting if you are using WAN load balancing and you want the VPN to use either WAN interface.</p> <p>Important: Two different WAN interfaces cannot be selected from the drop-down list if the VPN Gateway IP address is the same for both.</p>
Preempt Secondary Gateway	<p>To preempt a second gateway after a specified time, select this check box and configure the desired time in the Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds) option. The default time is 28800 seconds, or 8 hours.</p>	<p>To preempt a second gateway after a specified time, select this check box and configure the desired time in the Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds) option. The default time is 28800 seconds, or 8 hours.</p>

Advanced Settings for IKEv2 Mode

General
Network
Proposals
Advanced

Advanced Settings

- Enable Keep Alive
- Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy
- Disable IPsec Anti-Replay
- Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast
- Enable Multicast
- Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only
- Apply NAT Policies
- Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management

Management via this SA: HTTPS SSH SNMP

User login via this SA: HTTP HTTPS

Default LAN Gateway (optional):

VPN Policy bound to:

Preempt Secondary Gateway

Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds)

Advanced Settings for Main & Aggressive Modes

The screenshot shows the 'Advanced Settings' tab in the SonicWall configuration interface. It contains several checkboxes for enabling or disabling various features, and input fields for management and gateway settings.

Advanced Settings

- Enable Keep Alive
- Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy
- Disable IPsec Anti-Replay
- Require authentication of VPN clients by XAUTH
- Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast
- Enable Multicast
- Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only
- Apply NAT Policies
- Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management

Management via this SA: HTTPS SSH SNMP

User login via this SA: HTTP HTTPS

Default LAN Gateway (optional):

VPN Policy bound to:

Preempt Secondary Gateway

Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds)

21. Click **OK**.

22. Click **ACCEPT** on the **VPN > Base Settings** page to update the VPN Policies.

Configuring with a Third Party Certificate

NOTE: You must have a valid certificate from a third party certificate authority installed on your SonicWall firewall before you can configure your VPN policy using a third party IKE certificate.

With SonicWall firewalls, you can opt to use third-party certificates for authentication instead of the SonicWall Authentication Service. Using certificates from a third party provider or and using local certificates is a more manual process; therefore, experience with implementing Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) is necessary to understand the key components of digital certificates.

SonicWALL supports the following two certificate providers:

- VeriSign
- Entrust

To create a VPN SA using IKE and third party certificates:

1. Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings**.
2. Click **ADD** to create a new policy or click the **Edit** icon if you are updating and existing policy.

- 3 In the **Authentication Method** field, select **IKE using 3rd Party Certificates**. The **VPN Policy** window displays the third-party certificate options in the **IKE Authentication** section.

The screenshot shows the 'General' tab of the 'VPN Policy' configuration window. It is divided into two main sections: 'Security Policy' and 'IKE Authentication'.
In the 'Security Policy' section:
- 'Policy Type' is a dropdown menu set to 'Site to Site'.
- 'Authentication Method' is a dropdown menu set to 'IKE using 3rd Party Certificates'.
- 'Name', 'IPsec Primary Gateway Name or Address', and 'IPsec Secondary Gateway Name or Address' are empty text input fields.
In the 'IKE Authentication' section:
- 'Local Certificate' is a dropdown menu.
- 'Local IKE ID Type' is a dropdown menu set to 'Default ID from Certificate'.
- 'Peer IKE ID Type' is a dropdown menu set to 'Distinguished name (DN)'.
- 'Peer IKE ID' is a large text input field with a vertical scrollbar, currently empty.

- 4 Type a name for the Security Association in the **Name** field.
- 5 Type the IP address or Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the primary remote SonicWall in the **IPsec Primary Gateway Name or Address** field.
- 6 If you have a secondary remote SonicWall, enter the IP address or Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) in the **IPsec Secondary Gateway Name or Address** field.
- 7 Under **IKE Authentication**, select a third-party certificate from the **Local Certificate** list. You must have imported local certificates before selecting this option.
- 8 For **Local IKE ID Type**, the default is **Default ID from Certificate**. Or, choose one of the following:
- **Distinguished Name (DN)**
 - **Email ID (UserFQDN)**
 - **Domain Name (FQDN)**
 - **IP Address (IPV4)**

These alternate selections are the same as those for **Peer IKE ID Type**, described in the next step.

- 9 From the **Peer IKE ID Type** drop-down menu, select one of the following Peer ID types:

Peer IKE ID Type Option	Definition
Default ID from Certificate	Authentication is taken from the default ID on the certificate.
Distinguished Name (DN)	<p>Authentication is based on the certificate's Subject Distinguished Name field, which is contained in all certificates by default. The entire Distinguished Name field must be entered for site to site VPNs. Wild card characters are not supported.</p> <p>The format of any Subject Distinguished Name is determined by the issuing Certificate Authority. Common fields are Country (C=), Organization (O=), Organizational Unit (OU=), Common Name (CN=), Locality (L=), and vary with the issuing Certificate Authority. The actual Subject Distinguished Name field in an X.509 Certificate is a binary object which must be converted to a string for matching purposes. The fields are separated by the forward slash character, for example: /C=US/O=SonicWall, Inc./OU=TechPubs/CN=Joe Pub.</p>
Email ID (UserFQDN)	Authentication based on the Email ID (UserFQDN) types are based on the certificate's Subject Alternative Name field, which is <i>not</i> contained in all certificates by default. If the certificate contains a Subject Alternative Name, that value must be used. For site to site VPNs, wild card characters cannot be used. The full value of the Email ID must be entered. This is because site to site VPNs are expected to connect to a single peer, whereas Group VPNs expect to connect to multiple peers.
Domain Name (FQDN)	Authentication based on the Domain Name (FQDN) types are based on the certificate's Subject Alternative Name field, which is <i>not</i> contained in all certificates by default. If the certificate contains a Subject Alternative Name, that value must be used. For site to site VPNs, wild card characters cannot be used. The full value of the Domain Name must be entered because site to site VPNs are expected to connect to a single peer, whereas Group VPNs expect to connect to multiple peers.
IP Address (IPV4)	Based on the IPv4 IP address.

 **NOTE:** To find the certificate details (Subject Alternative Name, Distinguished Name, etc.), navigate to the **MANAGE | System Setup | Appliance > Certificates** page.

- 10 Type an ID string in the **Peer IKE ID** field.

11 Click **Network**.

The screenshot shows the 'Network' configuration page with the following settings:


- Local Networks:**
 - Choose local network from list (Dropdown: --Select Local Network--)
 - Any address
- Remote Networks:**
 - Use this VPN Tunnel as default route for all Internet traffic
 - Choose destination network from list (Dropdown: --Select Remote Network--)
 - Use IKEv2 IP Pool (Dropdown: --Select IP Pool Network--)

12 Under **Local Networks**, select one of these options:

- Select a local network from the **Choose local network from list** drop-down list if a specific local network can access the VPN tunnel.
- Select **Any Address** if traffic can originate from any local network. Use this option if a peer has **Use this VPN tunnel as default route for all Internet traffic** selected. Auto-added rules are created between Trusted Zones and the VPN Zone.

13 Under **Remote Networks**, select one of these options:

- Select **Use this VPN Tunnel as default route for all Internet traffic** if traffic from any local user cannot leave the firewall unless it is encrypted,

 **NOTE:** You can only configure one SA to use this setting.

- Alternatively, select **Choose Destination network from list**, and select the address object or group from the drop-down list.
- Select **Use IKEv2 IP Pool** if you want to support IKEv2 Config payload, and select the address object or IP Pool Network from the drop-down list.

14 Click **Proposals**.

General
Network
Proposals
Advanced

IKE (Phase 1) Proposal

Exchange: IKEv2 Mode

DH Group: Group 2

Encryption: AES-128

Authentication: SHA1

Life Time (seconds): 28800

Ipsec (Phase 2) Proposal

Protocol: ESP

Encryption: AES-128

Authentication: SHA1

Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy

Life Time (seconds): 28800

15 In the **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal** section, select the following settings:

Main Mode	Uses IKEv1 Phase 1 proposals with IPsec Phase 2 proposals. Suite B cryptography options are available for the DH Group in IKE Phase 1 settings, and for Encryption in the IPsec Phase 2 settings.
Aggressive Mode	Generally used when WAN addressing is dynamically assigned. Uses IKEv1 Phase 1 proposals with IPsec Phase 2 proposals. Suite B cryptography options are available for the DH Group in IKE Phase 1 settings, and for Encryption in the IPsec Phase 2 settings.
IKEv2 Mode	Causes all negotiation to happen via IKEv2 protocols, rather than using IKEv1 phases. NOTE: If you select IKE v2 Mode , both ends of the VPN tunnel must use IKE v2. When selected, the DH Group , Encryption , and Authentication fields are grayed out and cannot be defined.

16 Under **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal**, set the values for the remaining options. The default values for **DH Group**, **Encryption**, **Authentication**, and **Life Time** are acceptable for most VPN configurations.

NOTE: If **IKEv2 Mode** is selected for the **Exchange** field, the **DH Group**, **Encryption**, and **Authentication** fields are grayed out and no selection can be made for those options.

NOTE: Be sure the Phase 1 values on the opposite side of the tunnel are configured to match.

- a For the **DH Group**, when in **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode**, you can select from several Diffie Hellman exchanges:

Diffie-Hellman Groups Included in Suite B Cryptography	Other Diffie-Hellman Options
256-bit Random ECP Group	Group 1

384-bit Random ECP Group	Group 2
521-bit Random ECP Group	Group 5
192-bit Random ECP Group	Group 14
224-bit Random ECP Group	

- b For the **Encryption** field, if **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode** was selected, choose **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-128** (default), **AES-192**, or **AES-256** from the drop-down menu.
- c For the **Authentication** field, if **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode** was selected, choose **MD5**, **SHA1** (default), **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512** for enhanced authentication security.
- d For all **Exchange** modes, enter a value for **Life Time (seconds)**. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.

17 Set the options in the **IPsec (Phase 2) Proposal** section. The default values for **Protocol**, **Encryption**, **Authentication**, **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy**, and **Life Time (seconds)** are acceptable for most VPN SA configurations.

NOTE: Be sure the Phase 2 values on the opposite side of the tunnel are configured to match.

- a Select the desired protocol for **Protocol**.

If you selected **ESP** in the **Protocol** field, then in the **Encryption** field you can select from six encryption algorithms that are included in Suite B cryptography:

Suite B Cryptography Options	Other Options
AESGCM16-128	DES
AESGCM16-192	3DES
AESGCM16-256	AES-128
AESGMAC-128	AES-192
AESGMAC-192	AES-256
AESGMAC-256	None

If you selected **AH** in the **Protocol** field, the **Encryption** field is grayed out, and you cannot select any options.

- b For **Authentication**, select the desired authentication method: **MD5**, **SHA1** (default), **SHA256**, **SHA384**, **SHA512**, **AES-XCBC**, or **None**.
- c Select **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy** if you want an additional Diffie-Hellman key exchange as an added layer of security and select **Group 2** from the **DH Group** menu.
- d Enter a value in the **Life Time (seconds)** field. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.

18 Click **Advanced**.

Advanced for 3rd Party Certificates and IKEv2 Mode

General **Network** **Proposals** **Advanced**

Advanced Settings

- Enable Keep Alive
- Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy
- Disable IPsec Anti-Replay
- Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast
- Enable Multicast
- Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only
- Apply NAT Policies
- Enable OCSP Checking
- Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management

Management via this SA: HTTPS SSH SNMP

User login via this SA: HTTP HTTPS

Default LAN Gateway (optional):

VPN Policy bound to:

Preempt Secondary Gateway

Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds)

Advanced for 3rd Party Certificates and Main/Aggressive Mode

General **Network** **Proposals** **Advanced**

Advanced Settings

- Enable Keep Alive
- Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy
- Disable IPsec Anti-Replay
- Require authentication of VPN clients by XAUTH
- Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast
- Enable Multicast
- Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only
- Apply NAT Policies
- Enable OCSP Checking
- Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management

Management via this SA: HTTPS SSH SNMP

User login via this SA: HTTP HTTPS

Default LAN Gateway (optional):

VPN Policy bound to:

Preempt Secondary Gateway

19 Select any configuration options you want to apply to your VPN policy:

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode	IKEv2 Mode
Enable Keep Alive	Select to use heartbeat messages between peers on this VPN tunnel if one end of the tunnel fails, using a keep-alive heartbeat allows automatic renegotiation of the tunnel once both sides are available again without having to wait for the proposed Life Time to expire. NOTE: The Keep Alive option is disabled when the VPN policy is configured as a central gateway for DHCP over VPN or with a primary gateway name or address 0.0.0.0.	Cannot be selected for IKEv2 mode.
Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy	When <i>not</i> selected (default), accompanying Access Rules are created automatically. See VPN Auto-Added Access Rule Control on page 19 for more information.	When <i>not</i> selected (default), accompanying Access Rules are created automatically. See VPN Auto-Added Access Rule Control on page 19 for more information.
Disable IPsec Anti-Replay	Anti-replay is a form of partial sequence integrity and it detects arrival of duplicate IP datagrams (within a constrained window)	Anti-replay is a form of partial sequence integrity and it detects arrival of duplicate IP datagrams (within a constrained window)
Require authentication of VPN clients by XAUTH	Requires that all inbound traffic on this VPN policy is from a user authenticated by XAUTH/RADIUS. Unauthenticated traffic is not allowed on the VPN tunnel.	Not available in IKEv2 Mode.
Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast	Select to allow access to remote network resources by browsing the Windows Network Neighborhood.	Select to allow access to remote network resources by browsing the Windows Network Neighborhood.
Enable Multicast	Select to allow multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video application, to pass through the VPN tunnel.	Select to allow multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video application, to pass through the VPN tunnel.
Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only	Select if you want to show only the Suite B compliant algorithms.	Select if you want to show only the Suite B compliant algorithms.

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode	IKEv2 Mode
Apply NAT Policies	<p>Select if you want the firewall to translate traffic going over the Local network, Remote network, or both networks that are communicating via the VPN tunnel. When selected, choose a Translated Local Network or a Translated Remote Network or one of each from the two drop-down menus.</p> <p>NOTE: Generally, if NAT is required on a tunnel, either Local or Remote should be translated, but not both. Apply NAT Policies is particularly useful in cases where both side of a tunnel use either the same or overlapping subnets.</p>	<p>Select if you want the firewall to translate traffic going over the Local network, Remote network, or both networks that are communicating via the VPN tunnel. When selected, choose a Translated Local Network or a Translated Remote Network or one of each from the two drop-down menus.</p> <p>NOTE: Generally, if NAT is required on a tunnel, either Local or Remote should be translated, but not both. Apply NAT Policies is particularly useful in cases where both side of a tunnel use either the same or overlapping subnets.</p>
Enable OCSP Checking	Select if you want to check VPN certificate status and provide the OCSP Responder URL in the field provided.	Select if you want to check VPN certificate status and provide the OCSP Responder URL in the field provided.
Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management	Allows Layer 3 management of the access point.	Allows Layer 3 management of the access point.
Management via this SA	Select any of HTTPS , SSH , or SNMP for this option to manage the local SonicWall firewall through the VPN tunnel.	Select any of HTTPS , SSH , or SNMP for this option to manage the local SonicWall firewall through the VPN tunnel.
User login via this SA	Select HTTP , HTTPS , or both to allow users to log in through the VPN tunnel. NOTE: HTTP user login is not allowed with remote authentication.	Select HTTP , HTTPS , or both to allow users to log in through the VPN tunnel. NOTE: HTTP user login is not allowed with remote authentication.
Default LAN Gateway (optional)	If you want to route traffic that is destined for an unknown subnet through a LAN before entering this tunnel, select this option. For example, if you selected Use this VPN Tunnel as a default route for all internet traffic (on the Network view of this page, under Remote Networks) enter the router address.	If you want to route traffic that is destined for an unknown subnet through a LAN before entering this tunnel, select this option. For example, if you selected Use this VPN Tunnel as a default route for all internet traffic (on the Network view of this page, under Remote Networks) enter the router address.

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode	IKEv2 Mode
VPN Policy bound to	Select an interface or zone from the drop-down list. Zone WAN is the preferred setting if you are using WAN load balancing and you want the VPN to use either WAN interface. Important: Two different WAN interfaces cannot be selected from the drop-down list if the VPN Gateway IP address is the same for both.	Select an interface or zone from the drop-down list. Zone WAN is the preferred setting if you are using WAN load balancing and you want the VPN to use either WAN interface. Important: Two different WAN interfaces cannot be selected from the drop-down list if the VPN Gateway IP address is the same for both.
Preempt Secondary Gateway	To preempt a second gateway after a specified time, select this check box and configure the desired time in the Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds) option. The default time is 28800 seconds, or 8 hours.	To preempt a second gateway after a specified time, select this check box and configure the desired time in the Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds) option. The default time is 28800 seconds, or 8 hours.

20 Click **OK**.

21 Click **ACCEPT** on the **VPN > Base Settings** page to update the VPN Policies.

Configuring the Remote SonicWall Network Security Appliance

- Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings**.
- Click **ADD**. The **VPN Policy** dialog displays.
- In the **General** screen, select **IKE using Preshared Secret** from the **Authentication Method** drop-down menu.
- Enter a name for the SA in the **Name** field.
- Enter the host name or IP address of the local connection in the **IPsec Gateway Name or Address** field.
- Under **IKE Authentication**, enter the same shared secret that you configured on the primary/local side into the **Shared Secret** and **Confirm Shared Secret** fields.
- For **Local IKE ID**, select the same option that you configured on the primary/local side for **Peer IKE ID**.
- For **Peer IKE ID**, select the same option that you configured on the primary/local side for **Local IKE ID**.
- Click **Network**.
- Under **Local Networks**, select one of these
 - If a specific local network can access the VPN tunnel, select a local network from the **Choose local network from list** drop-down menu.
 - If traffic can originate from any local network, select **Any Address**. Use this option if a peer has **Use this VPN tunnel as default route for all Internet traffic** selected. Auto-added rules will be created between Trusted Zones and the VPN Zone.
- Under **Remote Networks**, select one of these:

- If traffic from any local user cannot leave the firewall unless it is encrypted, select **Use this VPN Tunnel as default route for all Internet traffic**.

i **NOTE:** You can only configure one SA to use this setting.

- Alternatively, select **Choose destination network from list**, and select the address object or group.

12 Click **Proposals**.

13 In the **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal** section, select the following settings:

Main Mode	Uses IKEv1 Phase 1 proposals with IPsec Phase 2 proposals. Suite B cryptography options are available for the DH Group in IKE Phase 1 settings, and for Encryption in the IPsec Phase 2 settings.
Aggressive Mode	Generally used when WAN addressing is dynamically assigned. Uses IKEv1 Phase 1 proposals with IPsec Phase 2 proposals. Suite B cryptography options are available for the DH Group in IKE Phase 1 settings, and for Encryption in the IPsec Phase 2 settings.
IKEv2 Mode	Causes all negotiation to happen via IKEv2 protocols, rather than using IKEv1 phases. NOTE: If you select IKE v2 Mode , both ends of the VPN tunnel must use IKE v2. When selected, the DH Group , Encryption , and Authentication fields are grayed out and cannot be defined.

14 Under **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal**, set the values for the remaining options. The default values for **DH Group**, **Encryption**, **Authentication**, and **Life Time** are acceptable for most VPN configurations.

i **NOTE:** If **IKEv2 Mode** is selected for the **Exchange** field, the **DH Group**, **Encryption**, and **Authentication** fields are grayed out and no selection can be made for those options.

i **NOTE:** Be sure the Phase 1 values on the opposite side of the tunnel are configured to match.

- For the **DH Group**, when in **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode**, you can select from several Diffie Hellman exchanges:

Diffie-Hellman Groups Included in Suite B Cryptography	Other Diffie-Hellman Options
256-bit Random ECP Group	Group 1
384-bit Random ECP Group	Group 2
521-bit Random ECP Group	Group 5
192-bit Random ECP Group	Group 14
224-bit Random ECP Group	

- For the **Encryption** field, if **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode** was selected, choose **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-128** (default), **AES-192**, or **AES-256** from the drop-down menu.
- For the **Authentication** field, if **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode** was selected, choose **MD5**, **SHA1** (default), **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512** for enhanced authentication security.
- For all **Exchange** modes, enter a value for **Life Time (seconds)**. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.

- 15 Set the options in the **IPsec (Phase 2) Proposal** section. The default values for **Protocol**, **Encryption**, **Authentication**, **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy**, and **Life Time (seconds)** are acceptable for most VPN SA configurations.

i **NOTE:** Be sure the Phase 2 values on the opposite side of the tunnel are configured to match.

- a Select the desired protocol for **Protocol**.

If you selected **ESP** in the **Protocol** field, then in the **Encryption** field you can select from six encryption algorithms that are included in Suite B cryptography:

Suite B Cryptography Options	Other Options
AESGCM16-128	DES
AESGCM16-192	3DES
AESGCM16-256	AES-128
AESGMAC-128	AES-192
AESGMAC-192	AES-256
AESGMAC-256	None

If you selected **AH** in the **Protocol** field, the **Encryption** field is grayed out, and you cannot select any options.

- b For **Authentication**, select the desired authentication method: **MD5**, **SHA1** (default), **SHA256**, **SHA384**, **SHA512**, **AES-XCBC**, or **None**.
- c Select **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy** if you want an additional Diffie-Hellman key exchange as an added layer of security and select **Group 2** from the **DH Group** menu.
- d Enter a value in the **Life Time (seconds)** field. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.

- 16 Click **Advanced**.

- 17 Select any of the following optional settings you want to apply to your VPN policy:

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode	IKEv2 Mode
Enable Keep Alive	Select to use heartbeat messages between peers on this VPN tunnel if one end of the tunnel fails, using a keep-alive heartbeat allows automatic renegotiation of the tunnel once both sides are available again without having to wait for the proposed Life Time to expire. NOTE: The Keep Alive option is disabled when the VPN policy is configured as a central gateway for DHCP over VPN or with a primary gateway name or address 0.0.0.0.	Cannot be selected for IKEv2 mode.
Suppress automatic Access Rules creation for VPN Policy	When <i>not</i> selected (default), accompanying Access Rules are created automatically. See VPN Auto-Added Access Rule Control on page 19 for more information.	When <i>not</i> selected (default), accompanying Access Rules are created automatically. See VPN Auto-Added Access Rule Control on page 19 for more information.

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode	IKEv2 Mode
Disable IPsec Anti-Replay	Anti-replay is a form of partial sequence integrity and it detects arrival of duplicate IP datagrams (within a constrained window)	Anti-replay is a form of partial sequence integrity and it detects arrival of duplicate IP datagrams (within a constrained window)
Require authentication of VPN clients by XAUTH	Requires that all inbound traffic on this VPN policy is from a user authenticated by XAUTH/RADIUS. Unauthenticated traffic is not allowed on the VPN tunnel.	Not available in IKEv2 Mode.
Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast	Select to allow access to remote network resources by browsing the Windows Network Neighborhood.	Select to allow access to remote network resources by browsing the Windows Network Neighborhood.
Enable Multicast	Select to allow multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video application, to pass through the VPN tunnel.	Select to allow multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video application, to pass through the VPN tunnel.
Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only	Select if you want to show only the Suite B compliant algorithms.	Select if you want to show only the Suite B compliant algorithms.
Apply NAT Policies	Select if you want the firewall to translate traffic going over the Local network, Remote network, or both networks that are communicating via the VPN tunnel. When selected, choose a Translated Local Network or a Translated Remote Network or one of each from the two drop-down menus. NOTE: Generally, if NAT is required on a tunnel, either Local or Remote should be translated, but not both. Apply NAT Policies is particularly useful in cases where both side of a tunnel use either the same or overlapping subnets.	Select if you want the firewall to translate traffic going over the Local network, Remote network, or both networks that are communicating via the VPN tunnel. When selected, choose a Translated Local Network or a Translated Remote Network or one of each from the two drop-down menus. NOTE: Generally, if NAT is required on a tunnel, either Local or Remote should be translated, but not both. Apply NAT Policies is particularly useful in cases where both side of a tunnel use either the same or overlapping subnets.
Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management	Allows Layer 3 management of the access point.	Allows Layer 3 management of the access point.
Management via this SA	Select any of HTTPS , SSH , or SNMP for this option to manage the local SonicWall firewall through the VPN tunnel.	Select any of HTTPS , SSH , or SNMP for this option to manage the local SonicWall firewall through the VPN tunnel.
User login via this SA	Select HTTP , HTTPS , or both to allow users to log in through the VPN tunnel. NOTE: HTTP user login is not allowed with remote authentication.	Select HTTP , HTTPS , or both to allow users to log in through the VPN tunnel. NOTE: HTTP user login is not allowed with remote authentication.

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode	IKEv2 Mode
Default LAN Gateway (optional)	If you want to route traffic that is destined for an unknown subnet through a LAN before entering this tunnel, select this option. For example, if you selected Use this VPN Tunnel as a default route for all internet traffic (on the Network view of this page, under Remote Networks) enter the router address.	If you want to route traffic that is destined for an unknown subnet through a LAN before entering this tunnel, select this option. For example, if you selected Use this VPN Tunnel as a default route for all internet traffic (on the Network view of this page, under Remote Networks) enter the router address.
VPN Policy bound to	Select an interface or zone from the drop-down list. Zone WAN is the preferred setting if you are using WAN load balancing and you want the VPN to use either WAN interface. Important: Two different WAN interfaces cannot be selected from the drop-down list if the VPN Gateway IP address is the same for both.	Select an interface or zone from the drop-down list. Zone WAN is the preferred setting if you are using WAN load balancing and you want the VPN to use either WAN interface. Important: Two different WAN interfaces cannot be selected from the drop-down list if the VPN Gateway IP address is the same for both.
Preempt Secondary Gateway	To preempt a second gateway after a specified time, select this check box and configure the desired time in the Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds) option. The default time is 28800 seconds, or 8 hours.	To preempt a second gateway after a specified time, select this check box and configure the desired time in the Primary Gateway Detection Interval (seconds) option. The default time is 28800 seconds, or 8 hours.

18 Click **OK**.

19 Click **ACCEPT** on the **VPN > Base Settings** page to update the VPN Policies.

TIP: If Window Networking (NetBIOS) has been enabled, users can view remote computers in their Windows Network Neighborhood. Users can also access resources on the remote LAN by entering servers' or workstations' remote IP addresses.

Configuring VPN Failover to a Static Route

You can configure a static route as a secondary route in case the VPN tunnel goes down. When defining the route policies, the **Allow VPN path to take precedence** option allows you to create a secondary route for a VPN tunnel and gives precedence to VPN traffic having the same destination address object. This results in the following behavior:

- When a VPN tunnel is active: static routes matching the destination address object of the VPN tunnel are automatically disabled if the **Allow VPN path to take precedence** option is enabled. All traffic is routed over the VPN tunnel to the destination address object.
- When a VPN tunnel goes down: static routes matching the destination address object of the VPN tunnel are automatically enabled. All traffic to the destination address object is routed over the static routes.

More information on how to set up network routing policies is provided in *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup*.

To configure a static route as a VPN failover:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | System Setup | Network > Routing**.
- 2 On the **Route Policies** screen, click **Add**.

The screenshot shows the 'Route Policy Settings' configuration form. It has two tabs: 'General' (selected) and 'Advanced'. The form includes the following fields and options:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Source:** A dropdown menu with 'Any' selected.
- Destination:** A dropdown menu with 'Any' selected.
- Service:** A dropdown menu with 'Any' selected.
- Route Type:** Radio buttons for 'Standard Route' (selected) and 'Multi-Path Route'.
- Interface:** A dropdown menu with '--Select an interface--' selected.
- Gateway:** A dropdown menu with '0.0.0.0' selected.
- Metric:** A text input field.
- Comment:** A text input field.
- Options:**
 - Disable route when the interface is disconnected
 - Allow VPN path to take precedence
- Probe:** A dropdown menu with 'None' selected.
- Additional Options:**
 - Disable route when probe succeeds
 - Probe default state is UP

- 3 Type a descriptive name for the policy into the **Name** field.
- 4 Select the appropriate **Source**, **Destination**, **Service**, **Gateway**, and **Interface**.
- 5 Define **Metric** as 1.
- 6 Select **Allow VPN path to take precedence**. This option is not selected by default.
- 7 Click **OK**.

VPN Auto Provisioning

You can configure various types of IPsec VPN policies, such as site-to-site policies, including GroupVPN, and route-based policies. For specific details on the setting for these kinds of policies, go to the following sections:

- [Site to Site VPNs](#)
- [Tunnel Interface Route-Based VPN](#)

Topics in this section include:

- [About VPN Auto Provisioning](#)
- [Configuring a VPN AP Server](#)

About VPN Auto Provisioning

The VPN Auto Provisioning feature simplifies the provisioning of site-to-site VPNs between two SonicWall firewalls. This section provides conceptual information and describes how to configure and use the SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning feature.

Topics:

- [Defining SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning](#)
- [Benefits of SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning](#)
- [How SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning Works](#)
- [Supported Platforms](#)

Defining SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning

The VPN Auto Provisioning feature simplifies the VPN provisioning of SonicWall firewalls. This is especially useful in large scale VPN deployments. In a classic hub-and-spoke site-to-site VPN configuration, there are many complex configuration tasks needed on the spoke side, such as configuring the Security Association and configuring the Protected Networks. In a large deployment with many remote gateways, or spokes, this can be a challenge. SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning provides a simplified configuration process to eliminate many configuration steps on the remote VPN peers.

NOTE: The *Hub* in a hub-and-spoke site-to-site VPN configuration can be referred to using various names, such as Server, Hub Gateway, Primary Gateway, Central Gateway. In the context of the SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning feature, the term *VPN AP Server* is used for the Hub. Similarly, the term *VPN AP Client* is used to refer to a Spoke, Client, Remote Gateway, Remote Firewall, or Peer Firewall.

Benefits of SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning

The obvious benefit of the VPN Auto Provisioning feature is ease of use. This is accomplished by hiding the complexity of initial configuration from the SonicOS administrator, similar to the provisioning process of the SonicWall Global VPN Client (GVC).

When using SonicWall GVC, a user merely points the GVC at a gateway; security and connection configuration occur automatically. SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning provides a similar solution for provisioning site-to-site hub-and-spoke configurations, simplifying large scale deployment to a trivial effort.

An added advantage is that after the initial VPN auto-provisioning, policy changes can be controlled at the central gateway and automatically updated at the spoke end. This solution is especially appealing in Enterprise and Managed Service deployments where central management is a top priority.

How SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning Works

There are two steps involved in VPN Auto Provisioning:

- SonicWall Auto Provisioning Server configuration for the central gateway, or VPN AP Server
- SonicWall Auto Provisioning Client configuration for the remote firewall, or VPN AP Client

Both are configured by adding a VPN policy on the **VPN > Base Settings** page in SonicOS.

i **NOTE:** SonicWall NS_{sp} and SuperMassive 9800 support SonicWall Auto Provisioning Server configuration, but not SonicWall Auto Provisioning Client configuration. The client side can be configured manually on these appliances. Other SonicWall platforms running SonicOS 6.5.2 or higher can be configured using SonicWall Auto Provisioning Client configuration.

In Server mode, you configure the Security Association (SA), Protected Networks, and other configuration fields as in a classic site-to-site VPN policy. In Client mode, limited configuration is needed. In most cases the remote firewall administrator simply needs to configure the IP address to connect to the peer server (central gateway), and then the VPN can be established.

i **NOTE:** SonicWall does not recommend configuring a single appliance as both an AP Server and an AP Client at the same time.

SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning is simple on the client side while still providing the essential elements of IP security:

Access control	Network access control is provided by the VPN AP Server. From the VPN AP Client perspective, destination networks are entirely under the control of the VPN AP Server administrator. However, a mechanism is provided to control access to VPN AP Client local networks.
Authentication	Authentication is provided with machine authentication credentials. In Phase 1 of the IPsec proposal, the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol provides machine-level authentication with <i>pre-shared keys</i> or <i>digital signatures</i> . You can select one of these authentication methods when configuring the VPN policy. For the pre-shared key authentication method, the administrator enters the VPN Auto Provisioning client ID and the key, or secret. For the digital signatures authentication method, the administrator selects the X.509 certificate which contains the client ID from the firewall's local certificate store. The certificate must have been previously stored on the firewall.

To increase security, user level credentials via XAUTH are supported. The user credentials are entered when adding the VPN policy. XAUTH extracts them as authorization records by using a key or magic cookie, rather than using a challenge/response mechanism in which a user dynamically enters a username and password. Besides providing additional authentication, the user credentials provide further access control to remote resources and/or a local proxy address used by the VPN AP Client. User credentials allow sharing of a single VPN AP Server policy among multiple VPN AP Client devices by differentiating the subsequent network provisioning.

Data confidentiality and integrity Data confidentiality and integrity are provided by Encapsulated Security Payload (ESP) crypto suite in Phase 2 of the IPsec proposal.

When policy changes occur at the VPN AP Server that affect a VPN AP Client configuration, the VPN AP Server uses IKE re-key mechanisms to ensure that a new Security Association with the appropriate parameters is established.

About Establishing the IKE Phase 1 Security Association

Since the goal of the VPN AP Client is ease of use, many IKE and IPsec parameters are defaulted or auto-negotiated. The VPN AP Client initiates Security Association establishment, but does not know the configuration of the VPN AP Server at initiation.

To allow IKE Phase 1 to be established, the set of possible choices is restricted; the VPN AP Client proposes multiple transforms (combined security parameters) from which the VPN AP Server can select its configured values. A Phase 1 transform contains the following parameters:

- Authentication – One of the following:
 - PRESHRD – Uses the pre-shared secret.
 - RSA_SIG – Use an X.509 certificate.
 - SW_DEFAULT_PSK – Uses the Default Provisioning Key.
 - XAUTH_INIT_PRESHARED – Uses the pre-shared secret combined with XAUTH user credentials.
 - XAUTH_INIT_RSA – Uses an X.509 certificate combined with XAUTH user credentials.
 - SW_XAUTH_DEFAULT_PSK – Uses the Default Provisioning Key combined with XAUTH user credentials.

All the above transforms contain the restricted or default values for the Phase 1 proposal settings:

- Exchange - Aggressive Mode
- Encryption – AES-256
- Hash – SHA1
- DH Group – Diffie Hellman Group 5
- Life Time (seconds) – 28800

The VPN AP Server responds by selecting a single transform from those contained in the VPN AP Client proposal. If the VPN AP Server selects a transform which uses an XAUTH Authentication Method, the VPN AP Client will await an XAUTH challenge following Phase 1 completion. If a non-XAUTH transform is chosen, the provisioning phase begins. The VPN AP Server provisions the VPN AP Client with the appropriate policy values including the Shared Secret, if one was configured on the VPN AP Server, and the VPN AP Client ID that was configured on the VPN AP Server.

After the Phase 1 SA is established and policy provisioning has completed, the Destination Networks appear in the **VPN Policies** section of the **VPN > Base Settings** page.

VPN Policies							
#	Name	Gateway	Destinations	Crypto Suite	Enable	Configure	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	WAN GroupVPN		ESP: AES-256/HMAC SHA512 (IKE)	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	WLAN GroupVPN		ESP: AES-256/HMAC SHA512 (IKE)	<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	3	Earth Corp	10.103.10.207	192.168.102.0 - 192.168.102.255	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

About Establishing IPsec Phase 2 using a Provisioned Policy

The values received during the VPN AP provisioning transaction are used to establish any subsequent Phase 2 Security Associations. A separate Phase 2 SA is initiated for each Destination Network. Traffic must be initiated from behind the remote side in order to trigger the Phase 2 SA negotiation. The SA is built based on the address object specified when configuring the VPN AP server policy settings on the **Network** screen (see [Configuring VPN AP Server Settings on Network](#)).

NOTE: If the same VPN policy on the AP Server is shared with multiple remote AP Clients, each remote network must be specifically listed as a unique address object. The individual address objects can be summarized in an Address Group when added to the **Remote Networks** section during configuration of the VPN AP server policy settings on the **Network** screen. A single address object cannot be used to summarize multiple remote networks as the SA is built based on the *specific* address object.

Upon success, the resulting tunnel appears in the **Currently Active VPN Tunnels** list.

Currently Active VPN Tunnels							
#	Created	Name	Local	Remote	Gateway		
1	08/18/2014 23:05:35	Earth Corp	192.168.168.0 - 192.168.168.255	192.168.102.0 - 192.168.102.255	10.103.10.207 X1		

A NAT rule is also added to the **MANAGE | Policies | Rules > NAT Policies** table.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	13	Any	AP Client Dynamic Local_2_0	Earth Corp Remote Grp	Original	Any	Original	Any	Any	17		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
-------------------------------------	----	-----	-----------------------------	-----------------------	----------	-----	----------	-----	-----	----	--	-------------------------------------	--

As Phase 2 parameters are provisioned by the VPN AP Server, there is no chance of a configuration mismatch. If Phase 2 parameters change at the VPN AP Server, all Phase 1 and Phase 2 Security Associations are deleted and renegotiated, ensuring policy synchronization.

Supported Platforms

SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning Client is **not** supported, while SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning Server **is** supported, on the following platforms:

- NS_{sp} 12800
- NS_{sp} 12400
- SuperMassive 9800

Configuring a VPN AP Server

VPN AP Server settings are configured on the server (hub) firewall by adding a VPN policy on the **VPN > Base Settings** page in SonicOS.

Due to the number of settings being described, the configuration is presented in multiple sections:

- [Starting the VPN AP Server Configuration](#)
- [Configuring VPN AP Server Settings on General](#)
- [Configuring VPN AP Server Settings on Network](#)
- [Configuring Advanced Settings on Proposals](#)
- [Configuring Advanced Settings on Advanced](#)

Starting the VPN AP Server Configuration

To begin configuration of VPN AP Server firewall settings using SonicOS VPN Auto Provisioning:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings**.
- 2 Select **IPv4** for **View IP Version**.
- 3 Below the **VPN Policies** table, click **ADD**. The **VPN Policy** dialog displays.
- 4 In the **Authentication Method** drop-down menu, select **SonicWall Auto Provisioning Server**.

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for a VPN policy. It has two tabs: 'General' and 'Network'. The 'Security Policy' section includes an 'Authentication Method' dropdown menu set to 'SonicWall Auto Provisioning Server', a 'Name' text input field, and radio buttons for 'Preshared Secret' (selected) and 'Certificate'. The 'SonicWall Settings' section includes a 'VPN AP Client ID' text input field, a checkbox for 'Use Default Provisioning Key', a 'Shared Secret' text input field, a 'Confirm Shared Secret' text input field, and a checked checkbox for 'Mask Shared Secret'. An 'ADVANCED...' button is located at the bottom left of the dialog.

i **NOTE:** The **ADVANCED.../HIDE** button at the bottom of the page toggles between showing or hiding the **Proposals** and **Advanced** buttons at the top. The settings on these two screens contain default values that may be changed at the your discretion.

Configuring VPN AP Server Settings on General

To configure VPN AP server settings on the General screen:

- 1 In the **Name** field, type in a descriptive name for the VPN policy.
- 2 For **Authentication Method**, select either:
 - **Preshared Secret** – Uses the VPN Auto Provisioning client ID and shared secret that you enter next. This option is selected by default. Proceed to [Step 3](#).
 - **Certificate** – Uses the X.509 certificate that you select next (the certificate must have been previously stored on the appliance). Skip to [Step 9](#).

i **NOTE:** If VPN AP Server policies are to be shared (as in hub-and-spoke deployments), SonicWall recommends using X.509 certificates to provide true authentication and prevent man-in-the-middle attacks.
- 3 If you selected **Preshared Secret** for the **Authentication Method**, then under **SonicWall Settings**, type the VPN Auto Provisioning client ID into the **VPN AP Client ID** field. This field is automatically populated with the value you entered into the **Name** field, but it can be changed.

i **NOTE:** This VPN policy value has to match at both the AP Server and AP Client side. A single AP Server policy can also be used to terminate multiple AP Clients.
- 4 Select **Use Default Provisioning Key** to allow VPN AP Clients to use the default key known to all SonicWall appliances for the *initial* Security Association. Once the SA is established, the **Preshared Secret** configured on the VPN AP Server is provisioned to the VPN AP Client for future use.

If this checkbox is cleared, VPN AP Clients must use the configured Shared Secret. This allows the administrator to modify the configured Shared Secret on the VPN AP Server only and then briefly allow Default Provisioning Key use to update the VPN AP Clients with the new Shared Secret value.

i **NOTE:** For best security, SonicWall recommends that the **Default Provisioning Key** option is only enabled for a short time during which the VPN AP Client can be provisioned with the Shared Secret while under administrative scrutiny.
- 5 If you want, clear the **Mask Shared Secret** checkbox before typing anything into the **Shared Secret** field. This checkbox is selected by default, which hides typed characters. If this checkbox is reselected, then the values from the **Shared Secret** field are automatically copied to the **Confirm Shared Secret** field.
- 6 In the **Shared Secret** field, type in the shared secret key. A minimum of four characters is required.

If **Use Default Provisioning Key** is checked, the **Preshared Secret** configured on the VPN AP Server is provisioned to the VPN AP Clients. If **Use Default Provisioning Key** is cleared, then this shared secret must also be configured on the VPN AP Clients.
- 7 In the **Confirm Shared Secret** field, type in the shared secret again. It must match the value entered in the **Shared Secret** field.
- 8 Go to [Step 12](#).

- 9 If you selected **Certificate** for the **Authentication Method**, then under **SonicWall Settings** select the desired certificate from the **Local Certificate** drop-down menu.

The screenshot shows a configuration window with two tabs: 'General' (selected) and 'Network'. The 'Security Policy' section includes an 'Authentication Method' dropdown menu set to 'SonicWall Auto Provisioning Server', a 'Name' text field, and radio buttons for 'Preshared Secret' and 'Certificate' (which is selected). The 'SonicWall Settings' section includes a 'Local Certificate' dropdown menu, a 'VPN AP Client ID Type' dropdown menu set to 'Distinguished name (DN)', and a 'VPN AP Client ID Filter' text field with a scroll bar. An 'ADVANCED...' button is located at the bottom left of the configuration area.

- 10 Select one of the following from the **VPN AP Client ID Type** drop-down menu:
- **Distinguished name (DN)**
 - **E-Mail ID (UserFQDN)**
 - **Domain name (FQDN)**
 - **IP Address (IPV4)**
- 11 In the **VPN AP Client ID Filter**, type in a matching string or filter to be applied to the Certificate ID presented during IKE negotiation.
- 12 Continue to [Configuring VPN AP Server Settings on Network](#).

Configuring VPN AP Server Settings on Network

To configure VPN AP server settings on the Network screen:

- 1 Click **Network**.

The screenshot shows the 'Network' tab of a configuration interface. It is divided into two sections: 'Local Networks' and 'Remote Networks'. In the 'Local Networks' section, there is a checkbox for 'Require Authentication of VPN AP Clients via XAUTH'. Below it is a dropdown menu for 'User Group for XAUTH Users' and another dropdown for 'Allow Unauthenticated VPN AP Client Access'. The 'Remote Networks' section has three radio button options: 'Choose destination network from list', 'Obtain NAT Proxy via Authentication Service', and 'Choose NAT Pool'. Each radio button option has a corresponding dropdown menu. At the bottom left of the form is a button labeled 'ADVANCED...'. The 'Network' tab is highlighted in blue.

- 2 Under **Local Networks**, select the **Require Authentication of VPN AP Clients via XAUTH** checkbox to force the use of user credentials for added security when establishing the SA.
- 3 If the XAUTH option is enabled, select the user group for the allowed users from the **User Group for XAUTH Users** drop-down menu. You can select an existing group such as *Trusted Users* or another standard group, or select **Create a new user group** to create a custom group.

For each authenticated user, the authentication service returns one or more network addresses which are sent to the VPN AP Client during the provisioning exchange.

If XAUTH is enabled and a user group is selected, the user on the VPN AP Client side must meet the following conditions for authentication to succeed:

- The user must belong to the selected user group.
 - The user can pass the authentication method configured in **MANAGE | System Setup | Users > Settings > Authentication > User Authentication Method**.
 - The user has VPN access privileges.
- 4 If the XAUTH option is disabled, select a network address object or group from the **Allow Unauthenticated VPN AP Client Access** drop-down menu, or select **Create a new address object/group** to create a custom object or group. The selected object defines the list of addresses and domains that can be accessed via this VPN connection. It is sent to the VPN AP Client during the provisioning exchange and then used as the VPN AP Client's remote proxy ID.

5 Under **Remote Networks**, select one of the following radio buttons and choose from the associated list, if applicable:

- **Choose destination network from list** – Select a network object from the drop-down menu of remote address objects that are actual routable networks at the VPN AP Client side, or create a custom object.

i **NOTE:** VPN Auto Provisioning does not support using a “super network” that includes all the AP Clients’ protected subnets. To allow multiple AP Clients with different protected subnets to connect to the same AP Server, configure an Address Group that includes all of the AP Clients’ protected subnets and use that in the **Choose destination network from list** field. This Address Group must be kept up to date as new AP Clients are added.

- **Obtain NAT Proxy via Authentication Service** – Select this option to have the RADIUS server return a Framed-IP Address attribute for the user, which is used by the VPN AP Client to NAT its internal addresses before sending traffic down the IPsec tunnel.
- **Choose NAT Pool** – Select a network object from the drop-down menu, or create a custom object. The chosen object specifies a pool of addresses to be assigned to the VPN AP Client for use with NAT. The client will translate its internal address to an address in the NAT pool before sending traffic down the IPsec tunnel.

i **NOTE:** When deploying VPN Auto Provisioning, you should allocate a large enough NAT IP address pool for all the existing and expected VPN AP Clients. Otherwise, additional VPN AP Clients cannot work properly if all the IP addresses in the pool have already been allocated.

NOTE: Configuring a large IP pool does not consume more memory than a small pool, so it is safe and a best practice to allocate a large enough pool to provide redundancy.

6 Continue to [Configuring Advanced Settings on Proposals](#).

Configuring Advanced Settings on Proposals

The configured parameters are automatically provisioned to the VPN AP Client prior to Phase 2 establishment, so there is no chance of configuration discrepancies between the VPN AP Server and VPN AP Client.

To configure VPN AP Server settings on the Proposals screen:

- 1 On the **General** or **Network** screen, click the **ADVANCED** button to display **Proposals**.

- 2 Click **Proposals**.

The screenshot shows a configuration window with four tabs: General, Network, Proposals (selected), and Advanced. The 'IKE (Phase 1) Proposal' section includes the following fields: Exchange (Aggressive Mode), DH Group (Group 5), Encryption (AES-256), Authentication (SHA1), and Life Time (seconds) (28800). The 'Ipsec (Phase 2) Proposal' section includes: Protocol (ESP), Encryption (AES-128), Authentication (SHA1), an unchecked checkbox for 'Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy', and Life Time (seconds) (28800).

- 3 Under **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal**, enter the phase 1 proposal lifetime in seconds. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.

To simplify auto-provisioning, the other fields in this section are dimmed and preset to:

- **Exchange: Aggressive Mode**
 - **DH Group: Group 5**
 - **Encryption: AES-256**
 - **Authentication: SHA1**
- 4 Under **Ipsec (Phase 2) Proposal**, select the desired encryption algorithm from the **Encryption** drop-down menu. The default is **AES-128**.
The **Protocol** field is dimmed and preset to **ESP** to use the Encapsulated Security Payload (ESP) crypto suite.
 - 5 Select the desired authentication encryption method from the **Authentication** drop-down menu. The default is **SHA1**.
 - 6 Select the **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy** checkbox if you want an additional Diffie-Hellman key exchange as an added layer of security. If selected, the **DH Group** drop-down list is displayed. Select the desired group from the list. The default is **Group 2**.
 - 7 Enter a value in the **Life Time (seconds)** field. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.
 - 8 Continue to [Configuring Advanced Settings on Advanced](#).

Configuring Advanced Settings on Advanced

To configure VPN AP Server settings on the Advanced screen:

- 1 Click **Advanced**.

The screenshot shows the 'Advanced Settings' section of the VPN AP Server configuration. At the top, there are four tabs: 'General', 'Network', 'Proposals', and 'Advanced' (which is highlighted). Below the tabs, the title 'Advanced Settings' is displayed. The settings include:

- Disable IPsec Anti-Replay
- Enable Multicast
- Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only
- Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management
- Management via this SA: HTTPS SSH SNMP
- User login via this SA: HTTP HTTPS
- Default LAN Gateway (optional): [Text input field]
- VPN Policy bound to: [Dropdown menu showing 'Zone WAN']

- 2 Select the **Disable IPsec Anti-Replay** checkbox to prevent packets with duplicate sequence numbers from being dropped.
- 3 Select the **Enable Multicast** checkbox to allow IP multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video applications, to pass from the VPN AP Server over any VPN AP Client SA established using this policy.
- 4 Optionally select **Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only**.
- 5 Select **Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management** to allow management of SonicWall SonicPoint or SonicWave wireless access devices through the VPN tunnel.
- 6 For **Management via this SA**, select one or more of the checkboxes to allow remote users to manage the VPN AP Server through the VPN tunnel using **HTTPS, SSH, or SNMP**.
- 7 For **User login via this SA**, select one or more of the checkboxes to allow remote users to log in through the VPN tunnel using **HTTP or HTTPS**.
- 8 In the **Default LAN Gateway (optional)** field, optionally enter the default LAN gateway IP address of the VPN AP Server. If a static route cannot be found for certain traffic, the VPN AP Server forwards the traffic out the configured default LAN gateway.
i | **NOTE:** This option might not work in some versions of SonicOS.
- 9 Select an interface or zone in the **VPN Policy bound to** drop-down menu to bind this VPN policy to a specific interface or zone.
- 10 When finished, click **OK**.

Tunnel Interface Route-Based VPN

This section describes how to configure **Tunnel Interface** VPN policies, which provide a route-based VPN solution. Tunnel Interface VPN policies differ from site to site VPN policies, which force the VPN policy configuration to include the network topology configuration. This makes it difficult to configure and maintain the VPN policy with a constantly changing network topology. Refer to [Site to Site VPNs](#) on page 20 for details.

With the route-based VPN approach, network topology configuration is removed from the VPN policy configuration. The VPN policy configuration creates an **unnumbered Tunnel Interface** between two end points. Static or dynamic routes can then be added to the Tunnel Interface. The route-based VPN approach moves network configuration from the VPN policy configuration to static or dynamic route configuration.

Route-based VPN makes configuring and maintaining the VPN policy easier, and provides flexibility on how traffic is routed. You can define multiple paths for overlapping networks over a clear or redundant VPN.

For auto provisioning of VPN networks, refer to [VPN Auto Provisioning](#) for details.

Topics:

- [Terminology](#)
- [Adding a Tunnel Interface](#)
- [Route Entries for Different Network Segments](#)
- [Redundant Static Routes for a Network](#)

Terminology

The following terms are used throughout this section:

VPN Tunnel Policy	A policy configured without a local/remote protected network. When sending a packet out, SonicOS does not need to look up any tunnel policy.
VPN Tunnel Interface	A numbered tunnel interface created on the Network > Interfaces page and bound to a tunnel policy. The interface is configured as the egress interface of a route entry or a SonicOS feature that actively sends out packets such as Net Monitor Policy or Syslog policy. When SonicOS sends a packet out over the VPN Tunnel, logically it's the same as sending the packet over a physical interface, except the packet is encrypted.

Numbered Tunnel Interface

A numbered tunnel interface has an IP address. A numbered tunnel interface is created on the **Network > Interfaces** page by adding a VPN Tunnel Interface. Functionally, the numbered tunnel interface is a superset of the unnumbered tunnel interface. You can configure a numbered tunnel interface in the same way as a standard interface, including settings for HTTPS, Ping, SNMP, and SSH management, HTTP and HTTPS user login, and fragmentation handling. You can use a numbered tunnel interface when configuring NAT policies, firewall access control lists, and routing policies including all types of dynamic routing (RIP, OSPF, BGP).

Unnumbered Tunnel Interface

An unnumbered tunnel interface has no IP address. An unnumbered tunnel interface is created when you configure a VPN policy with a **Policy Type** of **Tunnel Interface**. By default, it is used for simple, route-based VPN and doesn't require an IP address. If the **Allow Advanced Routing** option is enabled in the **Advanced** screen of the policy configuration dialog, an unnumbered tunnel interface can be used with RIP and OSPF dynamic routing. When configuring RIP or OSPF using an unnumbered tunnel interface, an IP address is borrowed for it from either a physical or logical (VLAN) interface.

Adding a Tunnel Interface

Route Based VPN configuration is a two-step process:

- 1 Create a Tunnel Interface. The cryptography suites used to secure the traffic between two end-points are defined in the Tunnel Interface.
- 2 Create a static or dynamic route using Tunnel Interface.

The Tunnel Interface is created when a Policy of type **Tunnel Interface** is added for the remote gateway. The Tunnel Interface must be bound to a physical interface and the IP address of that physical interface is used as the source address of the tunneled packet.

To add a Tunnel Interface:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings**.
- 2 Select **IPv4** for the **View IP Version** option. Tunnel Interface policies are only available for IPv4.

- 3 Click the **ADD** button.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a Security Policy. At the top, there are three tabs: 'General' (selected), 'Proposals', and 'Advanced'. Below the tabs is the title 'Security Policy'. The 'Policy Type' dropdown is set to 'Tunnel Interface'. The 'Authentication Method' dropdown is set to 'IKE using Preshared Secret'. There are two empty text input fields for 'Name' and 'IPsec Primary Gateway Name or Address'. Below this is the 'IKE Authentication' section. It contains a 'Shared Secret' text box, a 'Confirm Shared Secret' text box, and a checked checkbox for 'Mask Shared Secret'. There are two 'Local IKE ID' and 'Peer IKE ID' dropdown menus, both set to 'IPv4 Address', with corresponding empty text boxes for the address values.

- 4 On the **General** screen, select **Tunnel Interface** as the **Policy Type**.
- 5 Select one the following for Authentication Method:
 - **IKE using Preshared Secret** (default)
 - **IKE using 3rd Party Certificates**
 - **SonicWall Auto Provisioning Server**

The remaining fields in the **General** screen change depending on which option you select.

For more information about the available selections, see:

- [Configuring with a Preshared Secret Key](#) on page 39
 - [Configuring with a Third Party Certificate](#) on page 47
 - [Starting the VPN AP Server Configuration](#) on page 66
- 6 Enter a friendly name in the **Name** field.
 - 7 For **IPsec Primary Gateway Name or Address**, type in the gateway name or address.
 - 8 Under **IKE Authentication**, provide the required authentication information.

- 9 Click **Proposals**.

General
Proposals
Advanced

IKE (Phase 1) Proposal

Exchange: IKEv2 Mode ▼

DH Group: Group 2 ▼

Encryption: AES-128 ▼

Authentication: SHA1 ▼

Life Time (seconds): 28800

Ipsec (Phase 2) Proposal

Protocol: ESP ▼

Encryption: AES-128 ▼

Authentication: SHA1 ▼

Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy

Life Time (seconds): 28800

- 10 Under **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal**, choose one of the following options from the **Exchange** drop-down menu:

Main Mode	Uses IKEv1 Phase 1 proposals with IPsec Phase 2 proposals. Suite B cryptography options are available for the DH Group in IKE Phase 1 settings, and for Encryption in the IPsec Phase 2 settings.
Aggressive Mode	Generally used when WAN addressing is dynamically assigned. Uses IKEv1 Phase 1 proposals with IPsec Phase 2 proposals. Suite B cryptography options are available for the DH Group in IKE Phase 1 settings, and for Encryption in the IPsec Phase 2 settings.
IKEv2 Mode	Causes all negotiation to happen via IKEv2 protocols, rather than using IKEv1 phases. NOTE: If you select IKE v2 Mode , both ends of the VPN tunnel must use IKE v2. When selected, the DH Group , Encryption , and Authentication fields are grayed out and cannot be defined.

- 11 Under **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal**, set the values for the remaining options. The default values for **DH Group**, **Encryption**, **Authentication**, and **Life Time** are acceptable for most VPN configurations.

i **NOTE:** Be sure the Phase 1 values on the opposite side of the tunnel are configured to match.

- a For the **DH Group**, when in **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode**, you can select from several Diffie Hellman exchanges:

Diffie-Hellman Groups Included in Suite B Cryptography	Other Diffie-Hellman Options
256-bit Random ECP Group	Group 1
384-bit Random ECP Group	Group 2
521-bit Random ECP Group	Group 5

192-bit Random ECP Group	Group 14
224-bit Random ECP Group	

- b For the **Encryption** field, if **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode** was selected, choose **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-128** (default), **AES-192**, or **AES-256** from the drop-down menu.
 - c For the **Authentication** field, if **Main Mode** or **Aggressive Mode** was selected, choose **SHA-1** (default), **MD5**, **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512** for enhanced authentication security.
 - d For all **Exchange** modes, enter a value for **Life Time (seconds)**. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.
- 12 Set the options in the **IPsec (Phase 2) Proposal** section. The default values for **Protocol**, **Encryption**, **Authentication**, **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy**, and **Life Time (seconds)** are acceptable for most VPN SA configurations.

i **NOTE:** Be sure the Phase 2 values on the opposite side of the tunnel are configured to match.

- a In the **Protocol** field, select **ESP** or **AH**.
- b In the **Encryption** field, if you selected **ESP** in the **Protocol** field, you can select from six encryption algorithms that are included in Suite B cryptography:

Suite B Cryptography Options	Other Options
AESGCM16-128	DES
AESGCM16-192	3DES
AESGCM16-256	AES-128
AESGMAC-128	AES-192
AESGMAC-192	AES-256
AESGMAC-256	None

i **NOTE:** If you selected **AH** in the **Protocol** field, the **Encryption** field is grayed out, and you cannot select any options.

- c In the **Authentication** field, select the authentication method from the drop-down list:
 - **MD5**
 - **SHA1**
 - **SHA256**
 - **SHA384**
 - **SHA512**
 - **AES-XCBC**
- d Select **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy** if you want added security.
- e Enter a value in the **Life Time (seconds)** field. The default setting of **28800** forces the tunnel to renegotiate and exchange keys every 8 hours.

13 Click **Advanced**.

14 The following advanced options can be configured; by default, none are selected:

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode	IKEv2 Mode
Advanced Settings		
Enable Keep Alive	Cannot be selected for a route based interface.	Cannot be selected for a route based interface.
Disable IPsec Anti-Replay	Anti-replay is a form of partial sequence integrity and it detects arrival of duplicate IP datagrams (within a constrained window)	Anti-replay is a form of partial sequence integrity and it detects arrival of duplicate IP datagrams (within a constrained window)
Allow Advanced Routing	Adds this Tunnel Interface to the list of interfaces in the Routing Protocols table on the Network > Routing page.	Adds this Tunnel Interface to the list of interfaces in the Routing Protocols table on the Network > Routing page.
	NOTE: This option must be selected if the Tunnel Interface is to be used for advanced routing (RIP, OSPF). Making this an optional setting avoids adding all Tunnel Interfaces to the Routing Protocols table, which helps streamline the routing configuration.	
Enable Transport Mode	This option is used to protect packets that are already encapsulated by another tunneling protocol such as Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE). It encrypts only the payload and ESP trailer, so the IP header of the original packet is not encrypted.	Not available for IKEv2 Mode .
Enable Windows Networking (NetBIOS) Broadcast	Select to allow access to remote network resources by browsing the Windows Network Neighborhood.	Select to allow access to remote network resources by browsing the Windows Network Neighborhood.
Enable Multicast	Select to allow multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video application, to pass through the VPN tunnel.	Select to allow multicasting traffic, such as streaming audio (including VoIP) and video application, to pass through the VPN tunnel.
Display Suite B Compliant Algorithms Only	Select if you want to show only the Suite B compliant algorithms.	Select if you want to show only the Suite B compliant algorithms.

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode	IKEv2 Mode
Apply NAT Policies	<p>Select if you want the firewall to translate traffic going over the Local network, Remote network, or both networks that are communicating via the VPN tunnel. When selected, choose a Translated Local Network or a Translated Remote Network or one of each from the two drop-down menus.</p> <p>NOTE: Generally, if NAT is required on a tunnel, either Local or Remote should be translated, but not both. Apply NAT Policies is particularly useful in cases where both sides of a tunnel use either the same or overlapping subnets.</p>	<p>Select if you want the firewall to translate traffic going over the Local network, Remote network, or both networks that are communicating via the VPN tunnel. When selected, choose a Translated Local Network or a Translated Remote Network or one of each from the two drop-down menus.</p> <p>NOTE: Generally, if NAT is required on a tunnel, either Local or Remote should be translated, but not both. Apply NAT Policies is particularly useful in cases where both sides of a tunnel use either the same or overlapping subnets.</p>
Allow SonicPointN Layer 3 Management	Allows Layer-3 management for SonicPointN and SonicWave.	Allows Layer-3 management for SonicPointN and SonicWave.
Management via this SA	Select any of HTTPS , SSH , or SNMP for this option to manage the local SonicWall firewall through the VPN tunnel.	Select any of HTTPS , SSH , or SNMP for this option to manage the local SonicWall firewall through the VPN tunnel.
User login via this SA	Select HTTP , HTTPS , or both to allow users to login using the SA. NOTE: HTTP user login is not allows with remote authentication.	Select HTTP , HTTPS , or both to allow users to login using the SA. NOTE: HTTP user login is not allows with remote authentication.
VPN Policy bound to	Select an interface from the drop-down list. Important: Two different WAN interfaces cannot be selected from the drop-down list if the VPN Gateway IP address is the same for both.	Select an interface from the drop-down list. Important: Two different WAN interfaces cannot be selected from the drop-down list if the VPN Gateway IP address is the same for both.

Options	Main Mode or Aggressive Mode	IKEv2 Mode
IKEv2 Settings		
Do not send trigger packet during IKE SA negotiation	Not available	<p>This option is <i>not</i> selected by default. It should only be selected when required for interoperability if the peer cannot handle trigger packets.</p> <p>The recommended practice is to include trigger packets to help the IKEv2 Responder select the correct protected IP address ranges from its Security Policy Database. Not all implementations support this feature, so it may be appropriate to disable the inclusion of trigger packets to some IKE peers.</p>
Accept Hash & URL Certificate Type	Not available	Select if your devices can send and process has and certificate URLs instead of the certificate itself. If selected, sends a message to the peer device saying that HTTP certification look-up is supported.

15 Click **OK**.

16 Click **ACCEPT** on the **VPN > Base Settings** page to update the VPN Policies.

Creating a Static Route for the Tunnel Interface

After you have successfully added a Tunnel Interface VPN policy, you can then create a Static Route to go with it.

To create a Static Route for a Tunnel Interface:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | System Setup | Network > Routing > Route Policies**.
- 2 Click the **Add** button to display the **Add Route Policy** dialog.
- 3 Select the Tunnel Interface from the **Interface** drop-down menu, which lists all available tunnel interfaces.

NOTE: If the **Auto-add Access Rule** option is selected, firewall rules are automatically added and traffic is allowed between the configured networks using tunnel interface.
- 4 Configure the rest of the settings as necessary. Refer to the Network Routing section of *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup* for detailed information.
- 5 Click **OK**.

Route Entries for Different Network Segments

After a tunnel interface is created, multiple route entries can be configured to use the same tunnel interface for different networks. This provides a mechanism to modify the network topology without making any changes to the tunnel interface.

Redundant Static Routes for a Network

After more than one tunnel interface is configured, you can add multiple overlapping static routes; each static route uses a different tunnel interface to route the traffic. This provides routing redundancy for the traffic to reach the destination. If no redundant routes are available, you can add a static route to a drop tunnel interface to prevent VPN traffic from being sent out the default route. For more information, refer to the Network Interfaces section in *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup*.

Configuring Advanced VPN Settings

This section describes the settings available on the **VPN > Advanced Settings** page. It also provides information about Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP). OCSP allows you to check VPN certificate status without Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs). This allows timely updates regarding the status of the certificates used on your firewall.

The **VPN > Advanced Settings** page has two groups of options that can be enabled:

- **Advanced VPN Settings**
- **IKEv2 Settings**

Advanced VPN Settings

Enable IKE Dead Peer Detection

Dead Peer Detection Interval (seconds)

Failure Trigger Level (missed heartbeats)

Enable Dead Peer Detection for Idle VPN sessions

Dead Peer Detection Interval for Idle VPN sessions (seconds)

Enable Fragmented Packet Handling

Ignore DF (Don't Fragment) Bit

Enable NAT Traversal

Clean up Active tunnels when Peer Gateway DNS name resolves to a different IP Address

Enable OCSP Checking

Send VPN Tunnel Traps only when tunnel status changes

Use RADIUS in MSCHAP MSCHAPv2 mode for XAUTH (allows users to change expired passwords) ▾

DNS and WINS Server Settings for VPN Client ▾

IKEv2 Settings

Send IKEv2 Cookie Notify

Send IKEv2 Invalid SPI Notify

IKEv2 Dynamic Client Proposal

Topics:

- [Configuring Advanced VPN Settings](#)
- [Configuring IKEv2 Settings](#)
- [Using OCSP with NSsp and SM 9800 Appliances](#)

Configuring Advanced VPN Settings

Advanced VPN Settings globally affect all VPN policies.

To configure Advanced VPN Settings options:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Advanced Settings**.
- 2 Select **Enable IKE Dead Peer Detection** if you want inactive VPN tunnels to be dropped by the firewall.
 - **Dead Peer Detection Interval** - Enter the number of seconds between “heartbeats.” The default value is 60 seconds.
 - **Failure Trigger Level (missed heartbeats)** - Enter the number of missed heartbeats. The default value is 3. If the trigger level is reached, the VPN connection is dropped by the firewall. The firewall uses a UDP packet protected by Phase 1 Encryption as the heartbeat.
 - **Enable Dead Peer Detection for Idle VPN Sessions** - Select this setting if you want idle VPN connections to be dropped by the firewall after the time value defined in the **Dead Peer Detection Interval for Idle VPN Sessions (seconds)** field. The default value is 600 seconds (10 minutes).
- 3 Select **Enable Fragmented Packet Handling** if the VPN log report shows the log message `Fragmented IPsec packet dropped`, select this feature. Do not select it until the VPN tunnel is established and in operation.
 - **Ignore DF (Don't Fragment) Bit** - Select this checkbox to ignore the DF bit in the packet header. Some applications can explicitly set the ‘Don’t Fragment’ option in a packet, which tells all security appliances to not fragment the packet. This option, when enabled, causes the firewall to ignore the option and fragment the packet regardless.
- 4 Select **Enable NAT Traversal** if a NAT device is located between your VPN endpoints. IPsec VPNs protect traffic exchanged between authenticated endpoints, but authenticated endpoints cannot be dynamically re-mapped mid-session for NAT traversal to work. Therefore, to preserve a dynamic NAT binding for the life of an IPsec session, a 1-byte UDP is designated as a “NAT Traversal keepalive” and acts as a “heartbeat” sent by the VPN device behind the NAT or NAT device. The “keepalive” is silently discarded by the IPsec peer.
- 5 Select **Clean up Active Tunnels when Peer Gateway DNS name resolves to a different IP address** to break down SAs associated with old IP addresses and reconnect to the peer gateway.
- 6 Select **Enable OSCP Checking and OSCP Responder URL** to enable use of Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) to check VPN certificate status and specify the URL where to check certificate status. See [Using OSCP with NSsp and SM 9800 Appliances](#) on page 85.
- 7 Select **Send VPN Tunnel Traps only when tunnel status changes** to reduce the number of VPN tunnel traps that are sent by only sending traps when the tunnel status changes.
- 8 For **Use RADIUS in**, the primary reason for choosing this option is so that VPN client users can make use of the MSCHAP feature to allow them to change expired passwords at login time. When using RADIUS to authenticate VPN client users, select whether RADIUS is used in one of these modes:
 - **MSCHAP**
 - **MSCHAPv2** mode for XAUTH (allows users to change expired passwords)

Also, if this is set and LDAP is selected as the **Authentication method for login** on the **Users > Settings** page, but LDAP is not configured in a way that allows password updates, then password updates for VPN client users are done using MSCHAP-mode RADIUS after using LDAP to authenticate the user.



NOTE: Password updates can only be done by LDAP when using either:

- Active Directory with TLS and binding to it using an administrative account
- Novell eDirectory.

- 9 For **DNS and WINS Server Settings for VPN Client**, to configure DNS and WINS server settings for Client, such as a third party VPN Client through GroupVPN, or a Mobile IKEv2 Client, click the **CONFIGURE** button. The **Add VPN DNS And WINS Server** dialog displays.

- a **DNS Servers** – Select whether to specify the DNS servers dynamically or manually:
 - **Inherit DNS Settings Dynamically from the SonicWall's DNS settings** – The SonicWall appliance obtains the DNS server IP addresses automatically.
 - **Specify Manually** – Enter up to three DNS server IP addresses in the **DNS Server 1-3** fields.
- b **WINS Servers** – Enter up to two WINS server IP address in the **WINS Server 1-2** fields.

Configuring IKEv2 Settings

IKEv2 Settings affect IKE notifications and allow you to configure dynamic client support.

To configure IKEv2 Settings options:

- 1 Select **Send IKEv2 Cookie Notify** to send cookies to IKEv2 peers as an authentication tool.
- 2 Select **Send IKEv2 Invalid SPI Notify** to send an invalid Security Parameter Index (SPI) notification to IKEv2 peers when an active IKE security association (SA) exists. This option is selected by default.
- 3 For **IKEv2 Dynamic Client Proposal**, SonicOS provides IKEv2 Dynamic Client Support, which provides a way to configure the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) attributes rather than using the default settings.

Click **CONFIGURE** to launch the **Configure IKEv2 Dynamic Client Proposal** dialog.

- a For **DH Group**, select one of **Group 1**, **Group 2** (default), **Group 5**, **Group 14**, or one of the following five Diffie Hellman groups that are included in Suite B cryptography:
- **256-bit Random ECP Group**
 - **384-bit Random ECP Group**
 - **521-bit Random ECP Group**
 - **192-bit Random ECP Group**
 - **224-bit Random ECP Group**
- For **Encryption**, select one of **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-128** (default), **AES-192**, **AES-256**
 - For **Authentication**, select one of **MD5**, **SHA1** (default), **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512**

If a VPN Policy with IKEv2 exchange mode and a 0.0.0.0 IPsec gateway is defined, however, you cannot configure these IKE Proposal settings on an individual policy basis.

i **NOTE:** The VPN policy on the remote gateway must also be configured with the same settings.

Using OCSP with NSsp and SM 9800 Appliances

OCSP is designed to augment or replace CRL in your Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) or digital certificate system. The CRL is used to validate the digital certificates comprised by the PKI. This allows the Certificate Authority (CA) to revoke certificates before their scheduled expiration date and is useful in protecting the PKI system against stolen or invalid certificates.

The main disadvantage of Certificate Revocation Lists is the need for frequent updates to keep the CRL of every client current. These frequent updates greatly increase network traffic when the complete CRL is downloaded by every client. Depending on the frequency of the CRL updates, a period of time can exist when a certificate is revoked by the CRL but the client has not received the CRL update and permits the certificate to be used.

Online Certificate Status Protocol determines the current status of a digital certificate without using a CRL. OCSP enables the client or application to directly determine the status of an identified digital certificate. This provides more timely information about the certificate than is possible with CRLs. In addition, each client typically only checks a few certificates and does not incur the overhead of downloading an entire CRL for only a few entries. This greatly reduces the network traffic associated with certificate validation.

OCSP transports messages over HTTP for maximum compatibility with existing networks. This requires careful configuration of any caching servers in the network to avoid receiving a cached copy of an OCSP response that might be out of date.

The OCSP client communicates with an OCSP responder. The OCSP responder can be a CA server or another server that communicates with the CA server to determine the certificate status. The OCSP client issues a status request to an OCSP responder and suspends the acceptance of the certificate until the responder provides a response. The client request includes data such as protocol version, service request, target certificate identification and optional extensions. These optional extensions may or may not be acknowledged by the OCSP responder.

The OCSP responder receives the request from the client and checks that the message is properly formed and if the responder is able to respond to the service request. Then it checks if the request contains the correct information needed for the service desired. If all conditions are satisfied, the responder returns a definitive response to the OCSP client. The OCSP responder is required to provide a basic response of GOOD, REVOKED, or UNKNOWN. If both the OCSP client and responder support the optional extensions, other responses are possible. The GOOD state is the desired response as it indicates the certificate has not been revoked. The

REVOKED state indicates that the certificate has been revoked. The UNKNOWN state indicates the responder does not have information about the certificate in question.

OCSP servers typically work with a CA server in push or pull setup. The CA server can be configured to push a CRL list (revocation list) to the OCSP server. Additionally the OCSP server can be configured to periodically download (pull) the CRL from the CA server. The OCSP server must also be configured with an OCSP response signing certificate issued by the CA server. The signing certificate must be properly formatted or the OCSP client will not accept the response from the OCSP server.

OpenCA OCSP Responder

Using OCSP requires the OpenCA (OpenSource Certificate Authority) OpenCA OCSP Responder as it is the only supported OCSP responder. OpenCA OCSP Responder is available at <http://www.openca.org>. The OpenCA OCSP Responder is an rfc2560 compliant OCSP responder that runs on a default port of 2560 in homage to being based on rfc2560.

Loading Certificates to Use with OCSP

For SonicOS to act as an OCSP client to a responder, the CA certificate must be loaded onto the firewall.

To import the CA certificate:

- 1 On the **MANAGE | System Setup | Appliance > Certificates** page, click on **IMPORT**. This displays the **Import Certificate** dialog.
- 2 Select the **Import a CA certificate from a PKCS#7 (.p7b), PEM (.pem) or DER (.der or .cer) encoded file** option and specify the location of the certificate.
- 3 Click **IMPORT**.

Using OCSP with VPN Policies

The firewall OCSP settings can be configured on a policy level or globally. To configure OCSP checking for individual VPN policies, use the Advanced tab of the VPN Policy configuration page.

To configure OCSP checking in individual VPN policies:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings**.
- 2 Add or edit the VPN policy.
- 3 In the **Advanced** screen, select **Enable OCSP Checking**. See [Configuring Settings on the Advanced Screen](#) on page 24.
- 4 Specify the **OCSP Responder URL** of the OCSP server, for example <http://192.168.168.220:2560> where 192.168.168.220 is the IP address of your OCSP server and 2560 is the default port of operation for the OpenCA OCSP responder service.

Configuring DHCP over VPN

The **VPN > DHCP over VPN** page allows you to configure a firewall to obtain an IP address lease from a DHCP server at the other end of a VPN tunnel. In some network deployments, it is desirable to have all VPN networks on one logical IP subnet, and create the appearance of all VPN networks residing in one IP subnet address space. This facilitates IP address administration for the networks using VPN tunnels.

DHCP over VPN

Central Gateway ▾

Current DHCP over VPN Leases

IP Address	Host Name	Ethernet Address	Vendor	Lease Time	Tunnel Name	Configure
There are current...						

Current Dynamic: 0. Current Static: 0. Total: 0.

Topics:

- [About DHCP Relay Mode](#)
- [Configuring the Central Gateway for DHCP Over VPN](#)
- [Configuring DHCP over VPN Remote Gateway](#)
- [Current DHCP over VPN Leases](#)

About DHCP Relay Mode

In DHCP Relay mode, the firewalls at the remote and central sites are configured for VPN tunnels for initial DHCP traffic as well as subsequent IP traffic between the sites. The firewall at the remote site (**Remote Gateway**) passes DHCP broadcast packets through its VPN tunnel. The firewall at the central site (**Central Gateway**) relays DHCP packets from the client on the remote network to the DHCP server on the central site.

Configuring the Central Gateway for DHCP Over VPN

To configure DHCP over VPN for the Central Gateway:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > DHCP over VPN**.
- 2 Select **Central Gateway** from the drop-down list under **DHCP over VPN**.
- 3 Click **CONFIGURE**. The **DHCP over VPN Configuration** dialog displays.

The screenshot shows the 'DHCP Relay' configuration dialog box. It has a title bar 'DHCP Relay' and contains the following elements:

- Use Internal DHCP Server** (checkbox):
 - For Global VPN Client** (checkbox)
 - For Remote Firewall** (checkbox)
- Send DHCP requests to the server addresses listed below** (checkbox)
- IP Address** section with a table:

IP Address

- Buttons: **ADD**, **EDIT**, **DELETE**, **DELETE ALL**
- Relay IP Address (Optional):**
- Ready** status bar
- Buttons: **OK**, **CANCEL**, **HELP**

- 4 Select one of the following
 - If you want to use the DHCP Server for global VPN clients or for a remote firewall or for both, select the **Use Internal DHCP Server** option.
 - To use the DHCP Server for global VPN clients, select the **For Global VPN Client** option.
 - To use the DHCP Server for a remote firewall, select the **For Remote Firewall** option.
 - If you want to send DHCP requests to specific servers, select **Send DHCP requests to the server addresses listed below**.
 - a) Click **ADD**.
 - b) Type the IP addresses of DHCP servers in the **IP Address** field.
 - c) Click **OK**. The firewall now directs DHCP requests to the specified servers.

- 5 Type the IP address of a relay server in the **Relay IP Address (Optional)** field.

When set, this IP address is used as the DHCP Relay Agent IP address (giaddr) in place of this SonicWall's LAN IP address. This address is only used when no Relay IP Address has been set on the Remote Gateway, and must be reserved in the DHCP scope on the DHCP server.

- 6 Click **OK**.

Configuring DHCP over VPN Remote Gateway

To configure DHCP over VPN Remote Gateway:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > DHCP over VPN**.
- 2 Select **Remote Gateway** from the drop-down list under **DHCP over VPN**.
- 3 Click **CONFIGURE**.

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for DHCP over VPN. It features two tabs: 'General' (selected) and 'Devices'. Under the 'Settings' section, there are several fields and checkboxes. The 'Relay DHCP through this VPN Tunnel:' field is a dropdown menu currently showing 'VPN Policy not selected'. Below it, 'DHCP lease bound to:' is a dropdown menu showing 'Interface X0'. There is an unchecked checkbox for 'Accept DHCP Request from bridged WLAN interface'. The 'Relay IP Address:' and 'Remote Management IP Address:' fields are text inputs, both containing '0.0.0.0'. There is a checked checkbox for 'Block traffic through tunnel when IP spoof detected' and an unchecked checkbox for 'Obtain temporary lease from local DHCP server if tunnel is down'. At the bottom, 'Temporary Lease Time (minutes):' is a text input field containing the number '2'.

- 4 On the **General** screen, the VPN policy name is automatically displayed in the **Relay DHCP through this VPN Tunnel** field if the VPN policy has the setting **Local network obtains IP addresses using DHCP through this VPN Tunnel** enabled.

NOTE: Only VPN policies using IKE can be used as VPN tunnels for DHCP. The VPN tunnel must use IKE and the local network must be set appropriately. The local network obtains IP addresses using DHCP through this VPN Tunnel.

- 5 Select the interface to which the DHCP lease is bound from the **DHCP lease bound to** drop-down list.
- 6 To accept DHCP requests from bridged WLAN interfaces, enable the **Accept DHCP Request from bridged WLAN interface** checkbox.
- 7 If you enter an IP address in the **Relay IP Address** field, this IP address is used as the DHCP Relay Agent IP address (giaddr) in place of the Central Gateway's address and must be reserved in the DHCP scope on

the DHCP server. This address can also be used to manage this firewall remotely through the VPN tunnel from behind the Central Gateway.

i **NOTE:** The **Relay IP address** and **Remote Management IP Address** fields cannot be zero if management through the tunnel is required.

- 8 If you enter an IP address in the **Remote Management IP Address** field, this IP address is used to manage the firewall from behind the Central Gateway, and must be reserved in the DHCP scope on the DHCP server.
- 9 If you enable **Block traffic through tunnel when IP spoof detected**, the firewall blocks any traffic across the VPN tunnel that is spoofing an authenticated user's IP address. If you have any static devices, however, you must ensure that the correct Ethernet address is typed for the device. The Ethernet address is used as part of the identification process, and an incorrect Ethernet address can cause the firewall to respond to IP spoofs.
- 10 If the VPN tunnel is disrupted, temporary DHCP leases can be obtained from the local DHCP server. Once the tunnel is again active, the local DHCP server stops issuing leases. Enable the **Obtain temporary lease from local DHCP server if tunnel is down** check box. By enabling this check box, you have a failover option in case the tunnel ceases to function.
- 11 If you want to allow temporary leases for a certain time period, type the number of minutes for the temporary lease in the **Temporary Lease Time** box. The default value is **2** minutes.
- 12 To configure devices on your LAN, click **Devices**.

The screenshot shows the 'Devices' configuration page. It features two tabs: 'General' and 'Devices', with 'Devices' selected. The page is divided into two main sections: 'Static Devices on LAN' and 'Excluded LAN Devices'. The 'Static Devices on LAN' section contains a table with two columns: 'IP Address' and 'Ethernet Address'. Below this table are four buttons: 'ADD', 'EDIT', 'DELETE', and 'DELETE ALL'. The 'Excluded LAN Devices' section contains a table with one column: 'Ethernet Address'. Below this table are four buttons: 'ADD', 'EDIT', 'DELETE', and 'DELETE ALL'.

- 13 To configure **Static Devices on the LAN**, click **Add** to display the **Add LAN Device Entry** dialog.

The screenshot shows the 'Add LAN Device Entry' dialog box. It has two input fields: 'IP Address:' and 'Ethernet Address:'. Below the input fields are two buttons: 'OK' and 'CANCEL'.

- 14 Type the IP address of the device in the **IP Address** field and then type the Ethernet (MAC) address of the device in the **Ethernet Address** field.

An example of a static device is a printer as it cannot obtain an IP lease dynamically. If you do not have **Block traffic through tunnel when IP spoof detected** enabled, it is not necessary to type the Ethernet address of a device. You must exclude the Static IP addresses from the pool of available IP addresses on the DHCP server so that the DHCP server does not assign these addresses to DHCP clients. You should also exclude the IP address used as the **Relay IP Address**. It is recommended to reserve a block of IP address to use as Relay IP addresses.

- 15 Click **OK**.

- 16 To exclude devices on your LAN, click **Add** to display the **Add Excluded LAN Entry** dialog.



- 17 Enter the MAC address of the device in the **Ethernet Address** field.

- 18 Click **OK**.

- 19 Click **OK** to exit the **DHCP over VPN Configuration** dialog.

- ⓘ **NOTE:** You must configure the local DHCP server on the remote firewall to assign IP leases to these computers.
- ⓘ **NOTE:** If a remote site has trouble connecting to a central gateway and obtaining a lease, verify that Deterministic Network Enhancer (DNE) is not enabled on the remote computer.
- ⓘ **TIP:** If a static LAN IP address is outside of the DHCP scope, routing is possible to this IP, that is, two LANs.

Current DHCP over VPN Leases

The **Current DHCP over VPN Leases** table shows the details on the current bindings: **IP Address**, **Host Name**, **Ethernet Address**, **Vendr**, **Lease Time**, and **Tunnel Name**. The last column in the table, **Configure**, provides options to configure or delete a table entry (binding):

- To edit a binding, click the **Edit** icon.
- To delete a binding, which frees the IP address in the DHCP server, select the binding from the list, and then click the **Delete** icon. The operation takes a few seconds to complete. When completed, a message confirming the update is displayed at the bottom of the browser window.
- To delete all VPN leases, click **Delete All**.

Configuring L2TP Servers and VPN Client Access

The SonicWall network security appliance can terminate L2TP-over-IPsec connections from incoming Microsoft Windows or Google Android clients. In situations where running the Global VPN Client (GVC) is not possible, you can use the SonicWall L2TP Server to provide secure access to resources behind the firewall.

You can use Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) to create a VPN over public networks. L2TP provides interoperability between different VPN vendors that protocols such as PPTP and L2F do not, although L2TP combines the best of both protocols and is an extension of them.

L2TP supports several of the authentication options supported by PPP, including Password Authentication Protocol (PAP), Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP), and Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (MS-CHAP). You can use L2TP to authenticate the endpoints of a VPN tunnel to provide additional security, and you can implement it with IPsec to provide a secure, encrypted VPN solution.

Topics:

- [Configuring the L2TP Server](#)
- [Viewing Currently Active L2TP Sessions](#)
- [Configuring Microsoft Windows L2TP VPN Client Access](#)
- [Configuring Google Android L2TP VPN Client Access](#)

Configuring the L2TP Server

The **VPN > L2TP Server** page provides the settings for configuring the SonicWall network security appliance as a L2TP Server.

To configure the L2TP Server:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > L2TP Server**.
- 1 Select the **Enable L2TP Server** option. **CONFIGURE** becomes available.

- Click **CONFIGURE** to display the **L2TP Server Configuration** dialog.

- On the **L2TP Server** screen, enter a value, in seconds, in the **Keep alive time (secs)** field. This specifies how often special packets are sent to keep the connection open. The default is **60** seconds.
- Enter the IP address of your first DNS server in the **DNS Server 1** field. If you have a second DNS server, type the IP address in the **DNS Server 2** field.
- Enter the IP address of your first WINS server in the **WINS Server 1** field. If you have a second WINS server, type the IP address in the **WINS Server 2** field.
- Click **L2TP Users**.

- Select one of the following radio buttons for IP address settings:

IP address provided by RADIUS/LDAP Server

By default, this option is not selected. Choose it if a RADIUS/LDAP server provides IP addressing information to the L2TP clients. The Start IP and End IP fields are no longer active.

NOTE: To use this option RADIUS or LDAP authentication must be selected on the User Settings page. If this option is selected, an informational message to this effect is displayed. click **OK**.

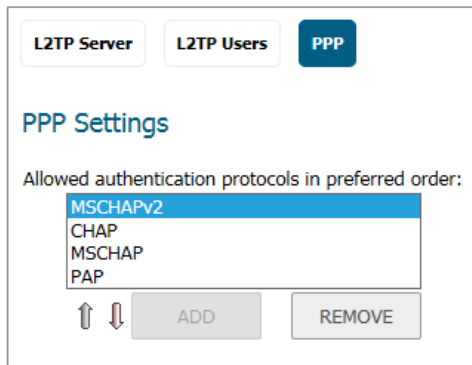
User the Local L2TP IP Pool

This is the default IP address setting. Choose it if the L2TP Server provides IP addresses.

Enter the range of private IP addresses on the LAN in the **Start IP** and **End IP** fields.

- If you have configured a specific user group defined for using L2TP, select it from the **User Group for L2TP users** menu or use **Everyone**.

9 Click **PPP**.



10 Select an authentication protocol and click **ADD** to add it. You can also remove authentication protocols or rearrange the order of authentication.

11 Click **OK**.

Viewing Currently Active L2TP Sessions

The **Active L2TP Sessions** section displays the currently active L2TP sessions.

Active L2TP Sessions					
User Name	PPP IP	Zone	Interface	Authentication	Host Name
No Active L2TP Sessions					

The following information is displayed.

User Name	The user name assigned in the local user database or the RADIUS user database.
PPP IP	The source IP address of the connection.
Zone	The zone used by the L2TP client.
Interface	The interface used to access the L2TP Server, whether it is a VPN client or another firewall.
Authentication	Type of authentication used by the L2TP client.
Host Name	The name of the L2TP client connecting to the L2TP Server.

Configuring Microsoft Windows L2TP VPN Client Access

This section provides an example for configuring L2TP client access to the WAN GroupVPN SA using the built-in L2TP Server and Microsoft's L2TP VPN Client.

NOTE: SonicOS supports only X.509 certificates for L2TP clients; PKCS #7 encoded X.509 certificates are not supported in SonicOS for L2TP connections.

To enable Microsoft L2TP VPN Client access to the WAN GroupVPN SA:

- 1 Navigate to the **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings** page.
- 2 In the row with the WAN GroupVPN policy, click the **Edit** icon in the **Configure** column.
- 3 On the **General** screen, select **IKE using Preshared Secret** for **Authentication Method**.
- 4 Enter a shared secret passphrase in the **Shared Secret** field to complete the client policy configuration.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Navigate to the **VPN > L2TP Server** page.
- 7 In the **L2TP Server Settings** section, select **Enable the L2TP Server**.
- 8 Click **CONFIGURE**.
- 9 Provide the following L2TP server settings:
 - **Keep alive time (secs):** 60
 - **DNS Server 1:** 199.2.252.10 (or use your ISP's DNS)
 - **DNS Server 2:** 4.2.2.2 (or use your ISP's DNS)
 - **DNS Server 3:** 0.0.0.0 (or use your ISP's DNS)
 - **WINS Server 1:** 0.0.0.0 (or use your WINS IP)
 - **WINS Server 2:** 0.0.0.0 (or use your WINS IP)
- 10 Click **L2TP Users**.
- 11 Set the following options:
 - **Use the Local L2TP IP pool:** Enabled (selected; the default)
 - **Start IP:** 10.20.0.1 (use your own IP)
 - **End IP:** 10.20.0.20 (use your own IP)
- 12 Select **Trusted Users** from **User group for L2TP users**.
- 13 Click **OK**.
- 14 Navigate to the **MANAGE | System Setup > Users > Local Users and Groups** page.
- 15 Click **Local Users**.

16 Click **Add** to display the **Add User** dialog.

The screenshot shows the 'User Settings' dialog box. At the top, there are four tabs: 'Settings' (selected), 'Groups', 'VPN Access', and 'Bookmark'. Below the tabs, the title 'User Settings' is displayed. The main area contains the following elements:

- This represents a domain user
- Name:
- Password:
- Confirm Password:
- User must change password
- Require one-time passwords
- E-mail address:
- Account Lifetime:
- Comment:

17 Specify a user name and password in the **Name**, **Password**, and **Confirm Password** fields.

18 Click **OK**.

i **NOTE:** By editing the VPN LAN zone or another VPN zone (found under **MANAGE | Policies | Rules > Access Rules**), you can restrict network access for L2TP clients. To locate a rule to edit, select the **All Types** view on the **Access Rules** table and look at the **Source** column for **L2TP IP Pool**.

19 On your Microsoft Windows computer, complete the following L2TP VPN Client configuration to enable secure access:

- a Navigate to the **Start > Control Panel > Network and Sharing Center**.
- b Open the New Connection Wizard.
- c Choose **Connect to a workplace**.
- d Click **Next**.
- e Choose **Virtual Private Network Connection**. Click **Next**.
- f Enter a name for your VPN connection. Click **Next**.
- g Enter the Public (WAN) IP address of the firewall. Alternatively, you can use a domain name that points to the firewall.
- h Click **Next**, and then click **Finish**.
- i In the Connection window, click **Properties**.
- j Click the **Security** tab.
- k Click on **IPSec Settings**.
- l Enable **Use pre-shared key for authentication**.
- m Enter your pre-shared secret key and click **OK**.
- n Click the **Networking** tab.
- o Change **Type of VPN** from **Automatic** to **L2TP IPSec VPN**.

- p Click **OK**.
- q Enter your XAUTH username and password.
- r Click **Connect**.

20 Verify your Microsoft Windows L2TP VPN device is connected by navigating to the **VPN > Base Settings** page. The VPN client is displayed in the **Currently Active VPN Tunnels** section.

Configuring Google Android L2TP VPN Client Access

This section provides an example for configuring L2TP client access to WAN GroupVPN SA using the built-in L2TP Server and Google Android's L2TP VPN Client.

To enable Google Android L2TP VPN Client access to WAN GroupVPN SA, perform the following steps:

- 1 Navigate to the **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings** page.
- 2 For the WAN GroupVPN policy, click the **Edit** icon.
- 3 Select **IKE using Preshared Secret** (default) from the **Authentication Method** drop-down menu.
- 4 Enter a shared secret passphrase in the **Shared Secret** field to complete the client policy configuration.
- 5 Click **Proposals**.
- 6 Provide the following settings for **IKE (Phase 1) Proposal**:
 - DH Group: **Group 2**
 - Encryption: **3DES**
 - Authentication: **SHA1**
 - Life Time (seconds): **28800**
- 7 Provide the following settings for **IPsec (Phase 2) Proposal**:
 - Protocol: **ESP**
 - Encryption: **DES**
 - Authentication: **SHA1**
 - Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy: **Enabled**
 - Life Time (seconds): **28800**
- 8 Click **Advanced**.
- 9 Set the following options:
 - **Enable Multicast**: Disabled
 - **Management via this SA**: Disabled all
 - **Default Gateway**: 0.0.0.0
 - **Require authentication of VPN clients by XAUTH**: Enabled
 - **User group for XAUTH users**: Trusted Users
- 10 Click **Client**.
- 11 Set the following options:

- **Cache XAUTH User Name and Password on Client:** Single Session or Always
- **Virtual Adapter setting:** DHCP Lease
- **Allow Connections to:** Split Tunnels
- **Set Default Route as this Gateway:** Disabled
- **Apply VPN Access Control List:** Disabled
- **Use Default Key for Simple Client Provisioning:** Enabled

12 Click **OK**.

13 Navigate to the **VPN > L2TP Server** page.

14 Select the **Enable the L2TP Server** checkbox.

15 Click **CONFIGURE**.

16 Provide the following L2TP server settings:

- **Keep alive time (secs):** 60
- **DNS Server 1:** 199.2.252.10 (or use your ISPs DNS)
- **DNS Server 2:** 4.2.2.2 (or use your ISPs DNS)
- **DNS Server 3:** 0.0.0.0 (or use your ISPs DNS)
- **WINS Server 1:** 0.0.0.0 (or use your WINS IP)
- **WINS Server 2:** 0.0.0.0 (or use your WINS IP)

17 Click **L2TP Users**.

18 Set the following options:

- **IP address provided by RADIUS/LDAP Server:** Disabled
- **Use the Local L2TP IP Pool:** Enabled
- **Start IP:** 10.20.0.1 (or use your own)
- **End IP:** 10.20.0.20 (or use your own)

19 From the **User Group for L2TP Users** drop-down list, select **Trusted Users**.

20 Click **OK**.

21 Navigate to the **MANAGE | System Setup | Users > Local Users and Groups** page.

22 Click **Local Users**.

23 Click **Add** to display the **Add User** dialog.

24 In the **Settings** screen, specify a user name in the **Name** field.

25 Specify the user password in the **Password** and **Confirm Password** fields.

26 Click **VPN Access**.

27 Add the desired network address object(s) for the L2TP clients to the **Access List** networks.

i | **NOTE:** At the minimum add the LAN Subnets, LAN Primary Subnet, and L2TP IP Pool address objects to the access list.

i | **NOTE:** You have now completed the SonicOS configuration.

- 28 On your Google Android device, complete the following L2TP VPN Client configuration to enable secure access:
- a Navigate to the APP page, and select the **Settings** icon. From the Settings menu, select **Wireless & networks**.
 - b Select **VPN Settings**, and click **Add VPN**.
 - c Select **Add L2TP/IPSec PSK VPN**.
 - d Under **VPN Name**, enter a VPN friendly name
 - e Set **VPN Server**.
 - f Enter the public IP address of firewall.
 - g Set **IPSec pre-shared key**: enter the passphrase for your WAN GroupVPN policy.
 - h Leave **L2TP secret** blank
 - i Optionally, set LAN domain settings.
 - j Enter your XAUTH username and password. Click **Connect**.
- 29 Verify your Google Android device is connected by navigating to the **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > Base Settings** page in SonicOS. The VPN client is displayed in the **Currently Active VPN Tunnels** section.

AWS VPN

The AWS VPN page makes it easy to create VPN connection from the SonicWall firewall to Virtual Private Clouds (VPCs) on Amazon Web Services (AWS). For more information about Amazon Virtual Private Cloud, refer to <https://aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.

IMPORTANT: Before setting up AWS VPN, be sure to configure the firewall with the AWS credentials that it needs to use. Navigate to **System Setup | Network > AWS Configuration** on the **MANAGE** view to do this. In addition, click **Test Configuration** to validate the settings before proceeding.

Topics:

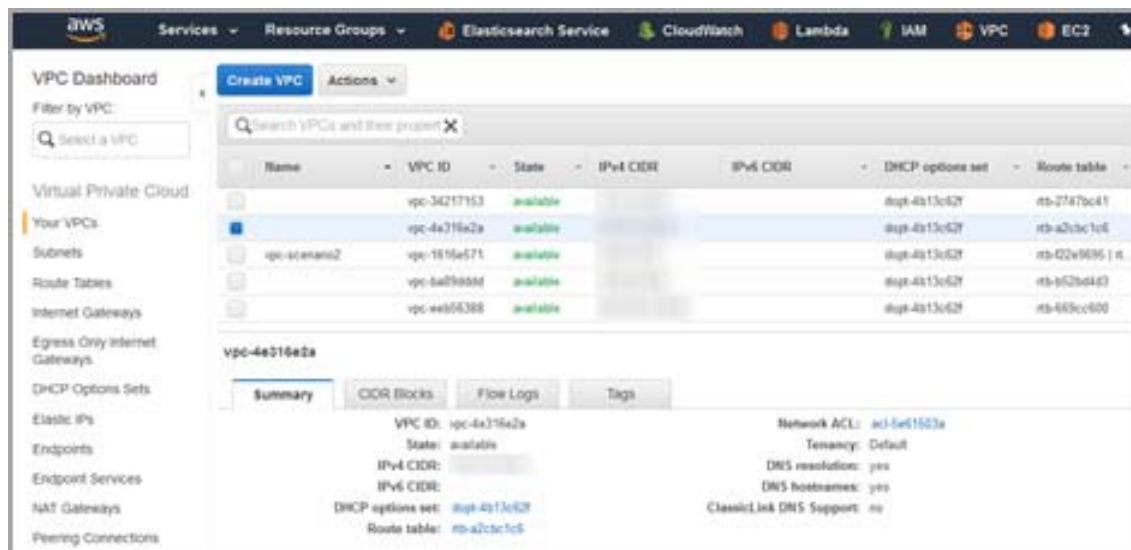
- [Overview](#)
- [Creating a New VPN Connection](#)
- [Reviewing the VPN Connection](#)
- [Route Propagation](#)
- [AWS Regions](#)
- [Deleting VPN Connections](#)

Overview

To get to AWS VPN, navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > AWS VPN**. The AWS VPN page is dominated by a table showing the VPCs in the AWS regions of interest. Each row in the table can be expanded to show the subnets, organized by route table, for the VPC. Other columns in the table show status information, and the buttons can be used to create and delete VPN connections to the corresponding VPC.

#	VPC/Subnets	CIDR	VPC Status	Manage VPN Connection	VPN Status	Details
Region: US West (Oregon) (us-west-2)						
1	VPC: vpc-34217153		available	CREATE VPN CONNECTION		
2	VPC: vpc-4e316e2a		available	CREATE VPN CONNECTION		
	Route Table: rtb-a2bc1c6			Propagate Connection		
	Subnet: subnet-b4fab700		available			
	Subnet: subnet-056d2d5d		available			
	Subnet: subnet-52c2a724		available			
3	VPC: vpc-1616e571		available	CREATE VPN CONNECTION		
4	VPC: vpc-ba89d6dd		available	CREATE VPN CONNECTION		
5	VPC: vpc-eeb56388		available	CREATE VPN CONNECTION		

The table on the firewall's AWS VPN page reflects the VPC information that is available on the AWS Console under the VPC Dashboard (shown below).

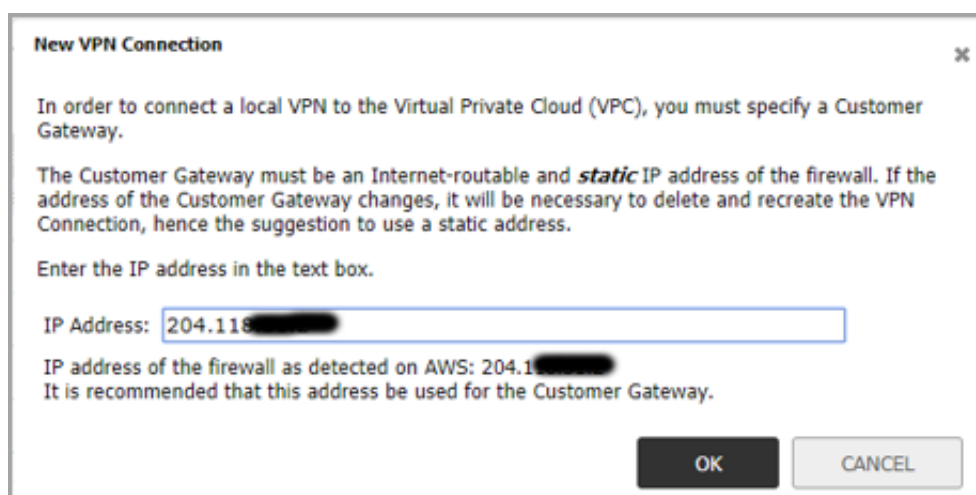


Creating a New VPN Connection

Creating a new VPN Connection from the firewall is relatively simple. To start the process, simply click on the **CREATE VPN CONNECTION** button on the appropriate row for the Amazon VPC that you wish to connect to the firewall.



The **New VPN Connection** window appears. Provide the public IP address of the firewall as seen from AWS. Code running on AWS attempts to detect the address and pre-populate the text input field. Verify that the address is reachable from outside the local network. If the firewall is behind a router or some other proxy, NAT rules should be put in place to ensure VPN traffic initiated from the AWS side can route back to the firewall.



NOTE: in some circumstances, you may be asked whether to enable Route Propagation. Refer to [Route Propagation](#) for more information.

The IP address you entered is used as the Customer Gateway. Click **OK** to close the dialog and initiate a series of processes that configure both the firewall and AWS in order to establish a VPN Connection between them.

Messages appear in the table row for the VPC that is the subject of the new VPN Connection, keeping you informed of the progress at the different stages.

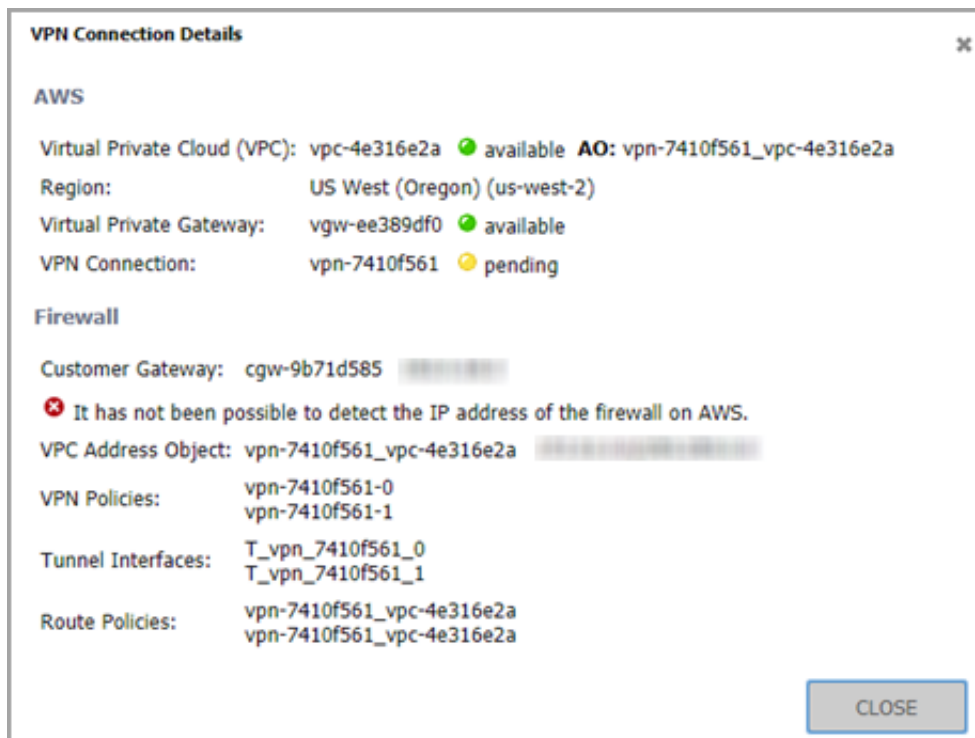


If an error occurs at any stage, a message appears with details of the problem and all the changes that have been made are reversed. This should allow you to correct any issues and try again.

Reviewing the VPN Connection

After creating a new VPN connection between the firewall and a VPC on AWS, you can view details of how the process changed their respective configurations.

On the firewall, navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | VPN > AWS VPN**. Find the row in the VPC table corresponding to the AWS VPC in question and click the **Information** button. Details of the VPN connection are shown.



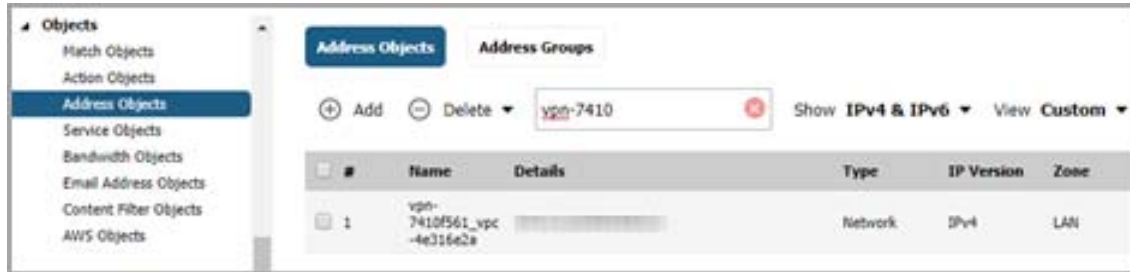
NOTE: Because the VPN connection has only just been created and the status is reported as still **pending**. Use the **Refresh** button on the AWS VPN page to reload the data in the table and on the associated VPN Connection Details window.

The following sections describe the configuration on the firewall and on AWS:

- [Configuration on the Firewall](#)
- [Configuration on Amazon Web Services](#)

Configuration on the Firewall

As part of the process to create a new VPN connection, an Address Object representing the VPC is added and can be viewed in SonicOS on the **Address Objects** page. Navigate to **MANAGE | Policies | Objects > Address Objects**. The convention used to name the object combines the AWS IDs of the VPN connection and the VPC itself. The Address Object is a network type, with the network being that of the remote VPC.



Two VPN policies are also created, showing that AWS uses two VPNs per VPN connection to provide redundancy for a failover mechanism. The VPN policy names used on the firewall are based on the AWS ID for the connection along with a suffix to differentiate between the two policies.



Matching the two VPN policies, two tunnel interfaces are created. They also use a naming convention based on the ID of the VPN Connection.



Similarly, two route policies are created, both using the Address Object representing the VPC as their destination. Each one uses a different tunnel interface.

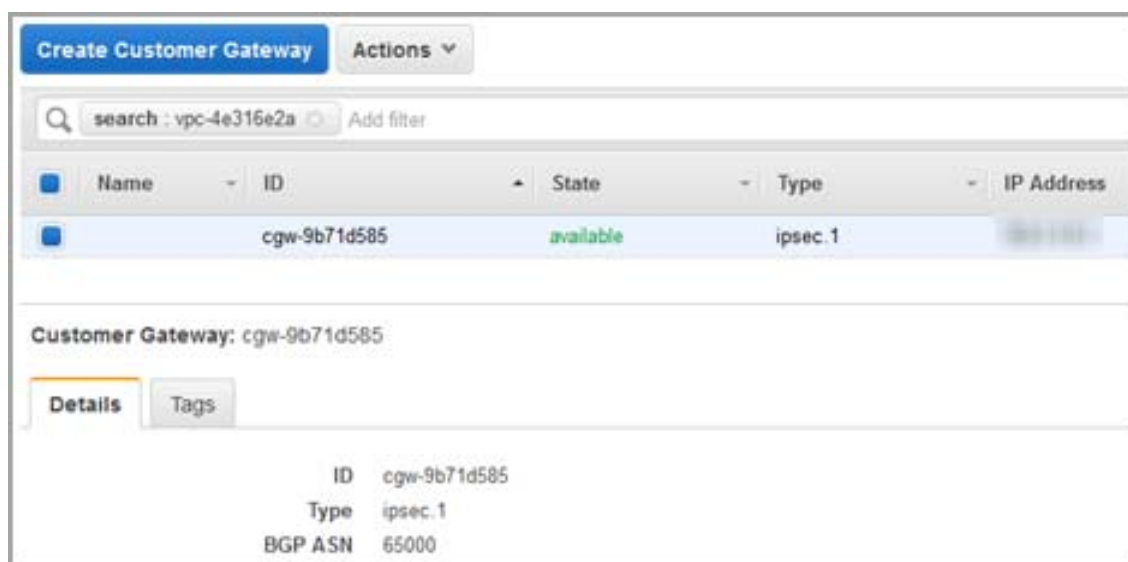


Configuration on Amazon Web Services

The process of creating a VPN Connection from the **VPN > AWS VPN** page in SonicOS also makes changes to the configuration on AWS. Using the AWS Console, under the VPC Dashboard, view VPN connections. Using the VPC ID as a filter, find the VPN connection that was created.



The customer gateway, the endpoint at the firewall, and the IP address specified when first creating the VPN connection can also be viewed on the AWS Console. Navigate to the Customer Gateways page, under the VPC Dashboard.



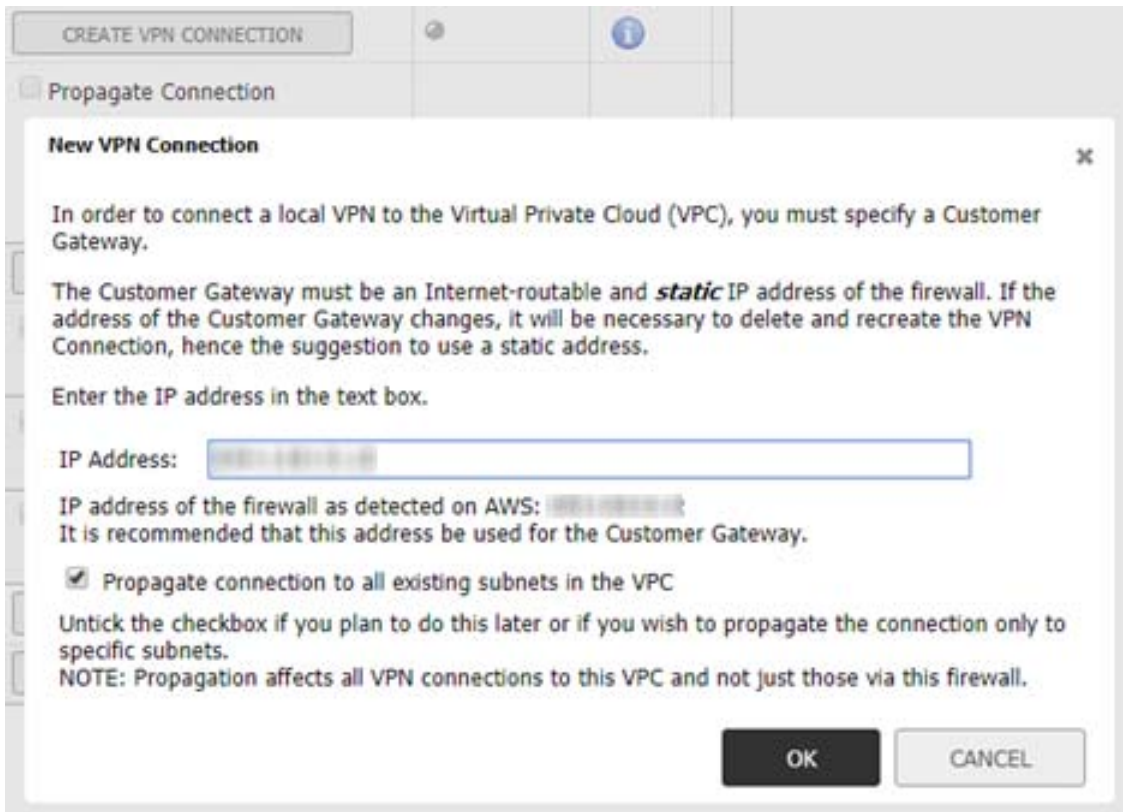
Route Propagation

Additional steps need to be taken to ensure connections can be made to and from resources on subnets within a particular VPC. You must also propagate the connections to the route table that is used for the subnet of interest. Three ways can be used to enable propagation to the route tables in a VPC.

- When Creating the VPN Connection

If the firewall detects that route propagation is disabled for one or more route tables within a VPC, the popup dialog includes a checkbox allowing you to specify that Route Propagation should be enabled for

all route tables within that VPC. However, this is not a consistent approach; it does allow propagation for some route tables and not others.



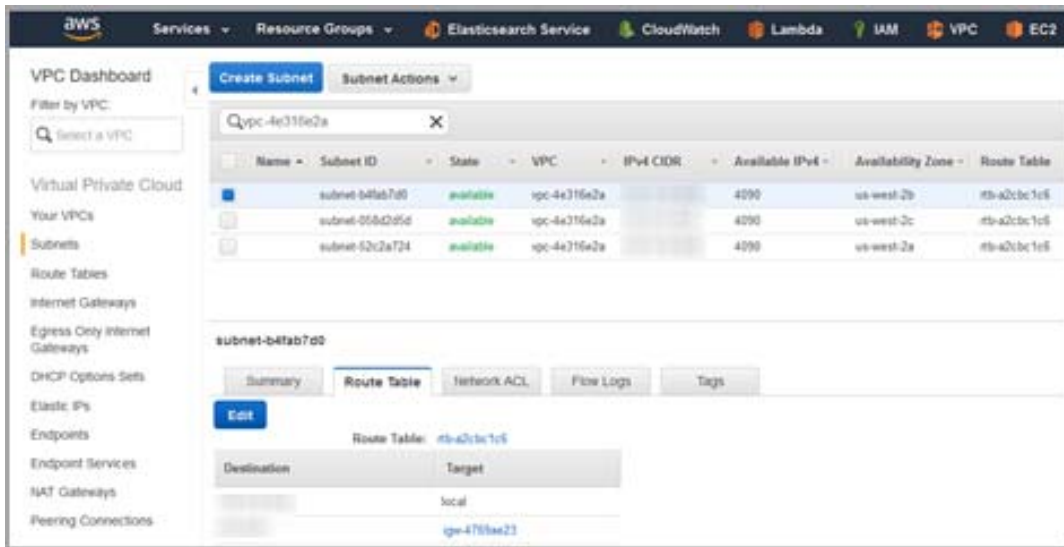
- Using checkboxes for each route table

After a VPN connection has been established, expanding a row in the VPC table on the AWS VPN page reveals all of the subnets in that VPC, organized by route table. Each route table row includes a checkbox that can be used to enable or disable propagation for that particular route table and the subnets it governs.

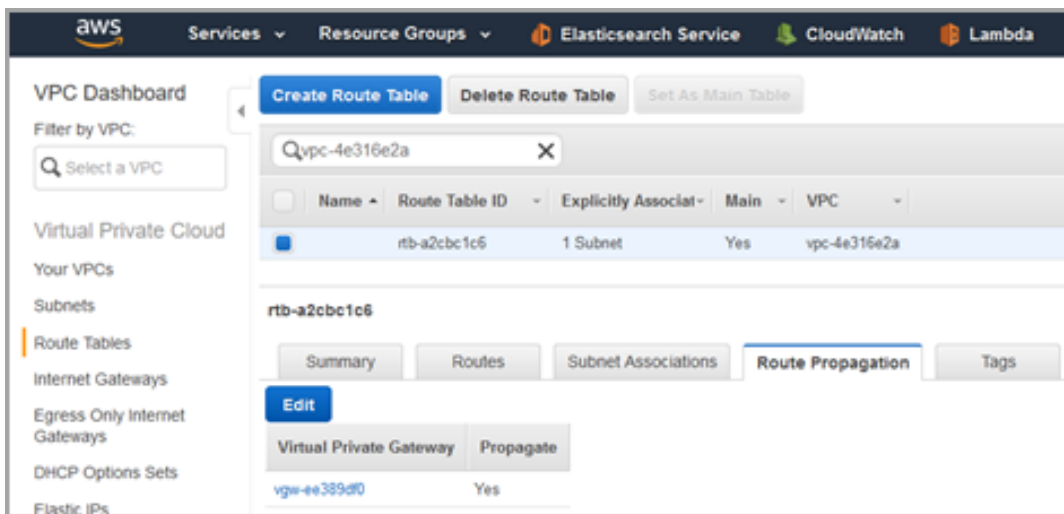


- On the AWS Console

The subnets for each VPC can be viewed on the subnets page under the VPC Dashboard on the AWS Console. Selecting a subnet identifies the governing route table and provides a hyperlink so that you can jump to the relevant page.



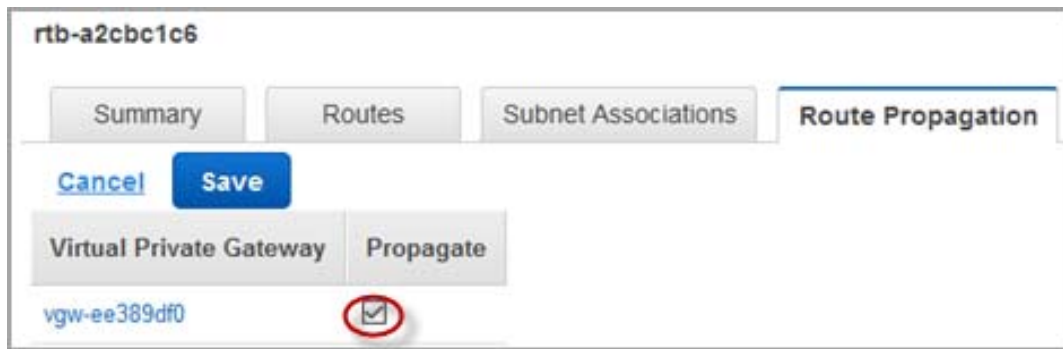
Otherwise, you can navigate to the Route Table page and use the filter to narrow the search by VPC or subnet.



To enable or disable route propagation to a specific route table:

- 1 Select the route table in question.
- 2 Click on the **Route Propagation** tab.
- 3 Click the *Edit* button.
- 4 Check or uncheck the **Propagate** box as appropriate.

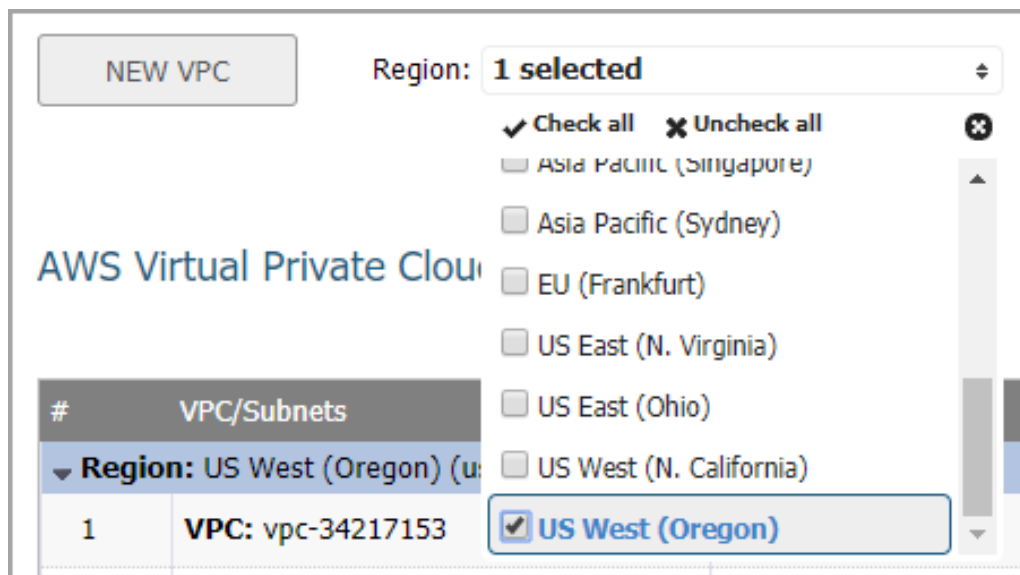
- 5 Click the **Save** button to commit your changes.



AWS Regions

Resources on Amazon Web Services are distributed across a number of AWS regions. A customer can have VPCs in any or all regions. The AWS VPN page includes a drop down control allowing you to select one or more regions of interest. The VPCs from all selected regions are displayed in the table and new VPN connections can be made to any of those VPCs.

The region selection control is initialized with the default region as specified on the AWS configuration and is used to send firewall logs to AWS CloudWatch Logs on the AWS Logs page. Regardless of the initial selection, you can choose which regions from which to show the associated VPCs in the table.



Deleting VPN Connections

The AWS VPN page includes a facility for removing unwanted VPN Connections.

For VPCs that have a corresponding VPN Connection, the button in the related table row in the VPC table changes from a **Create VPN Connection** function to **Delete VPN Connection**. After clicking the button, the system asks for confirmation and then initiates a process that deletes as many configuration settings as it safe to do without affecting other VPN connections from this or other firewalls. It removes the associated VPN and route policies, and the tunnel interfaces on the firewall. On AWS, it removes the Customer Gateway, but only if it

is not being used elsewhere (perhaps on other VPN Connections from the same firewall but to other VPCs). It does not delete the VPN gateway or change the route propagation settings.

The screenshot shows the AWS VPN console interface. A table lists five VPN connections, all with a status of 'available'. A dialog box titled 'Delete VPN' is open, asking for confirmation to delete a specific VPN connection (vpn-7430f561) and providing a note about the consequences of deletion.

#	VPC/Subnets	CIDR	VPC Status	Manage VPN Connection	VPN Status	Details
Region: US West (Oregon) (us-west-2)						
1	VPC: vpc-34217153	10.0.0.0/16	available	CREATE VPN CONNECTION	🔍	🔍
2	VPC: vpc-4e316e2a	10.0.0.0/16	available	DELETE VPN CONNECTION	available	🔍
3	VPC: vpc-1616e571	10.0.0.0/16	available	CREATE		
4	VPC: vpc-ba89d6dd	10.0.0.0/16	available	CREATE		
5	VPC: vpc-eeb56388	10.0.0.0/16	available	CREATE		

Delete VPN

Are you sure you want to delete the VPN connection: vpn-7430f561 that connects to the Virtual Private Cloud with ID: vpc-4e316e2a?

NOTE: this will also remove the associated VPN Policies on the firewall and, if not used elsewhere, the Customer Gateway. However, it will not delete the Virtual Private Gateway associated with the VPC or affect propagation to the route tables.

YES **NO**

Connectivity | SSL VPN

- [About SSL VPN](#)
- [Configuring SSL VPN Server Behavior](#)
- [Configuring SSL VPN Client Settings](#)
- [Configuring the SSL VPN Web Portal](#)
- [Configuring Virtual Office](#)

About SSL VPN

This section provides information on how to configure the SSL VPN features on the SonicWall network security appliance. SonicWall's SSL VPN features provide secure remote access to the network using the NetExtender client.

NetExtender is an SSL VPN client for Windows, Mac, or Linux users that is downloaded transparently. It allows you to run any application securely on the network and uses Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP). NetExtender allows remote clients seamless access to resources on your local network. Users can access NetExtender two ways:


- Logging in to the Virtual Office web portal provided by the SonicWall network security appliance
- Launching the standalone NetExtender client

Each SonicWall appliance supports a maximum number of concurrent remote users. Refer to the [Maximum number of concurrent SSL VPN users](#) table for details.

Maximum number of concurrent SSL VPN users

SonicWall appliance model	Maximum concurrent SSL VPN connections
SM 9800	3000
NS _{sp} 12400	3000
NS _{sp} 12800	3000

SonicOS supports NetExtender connections for users with IPv6 addresses. The address objects drop-down list includes all the predefined IPv6 address objects.

 **NOTE:** IPv6 Wins Server is *not* supported. IPv6 FQDN is supported.

Topics:

- [About NetExtender](#)
- [Configuring Users for SSL VPN Access](#)
- [Biometric Authentication](#)

About NetExtender

SonicWall's SSL VPN NetExtender is a transparent software application for Windows, Mac, and Linux users that enables remote users to securely connect to the company network. With NetExtender, remote users can securely run any application on the company network. Users can upload and download files, mount network drives, and access resources as if they were on the local network.

NetExtender provides remote users with full access to your protected internal network. The experience is virtually identical to that of using a traditional IPsec VPN client, but the NetExtender Windows client is automatically installed on a remote user's PC using the XPCOM plugin when using Firefox. On MacOS systems, supported browsers use Java controls to automatically install NetExtender from the Virtual Office portal. Linux

systems can also install and use the NetExtender client. Windows users need to download the client from the portal, and those with mobile devices need to download Mobile Connect from the app store.

The NetExtender standalone client can be installed the first time the user launches NetExtender. Thereafter, it can be accessed directly from the **Start** menu on Windows systems and from the **Application** folder or dock on MacOS systems or by the path name or from the shortcut bar on Linux systems.

After installation, NetExtender automatically launches and connects a virtual adapter for secure SSL VPN, point-to-point access to permitted hosts and subnets on the internal network.

Topics:

- [Creating an Address Object for the NetExtender Range](#)
- [Setting Up Access](#)
- [Configuring Proxies](#)
- [Installing the Stand-Alone Client](#)

Creating an Address Object for the NetExtender Range

As a part of the NetExtender configuration, you need to create an address object for the NetExtender IP address range. This address object is then used when configuring the Device Profiles.

You can create address objects for both an IPv4 address range and an IPv6 address range to be used in the **SSL VPN > Client Settings** configuration. The address range configured in the address object defines the IP address pool from which addresses are assigned to remote users during NetExtender sessions. The range needs to be large enough to accommodate the maximum number of concurrent NetExtender users you intend to support. You may want to allow for a few extra addresses for growth, but it's not required.

i | **NOTE:** In cases where other hosts are on the same segment as the appliance, the address range must not overlap or collide with any assigned addresses.

Details for how to configure an address object are provided in the *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 Policies* administration documentation in the **Address Objects** section. Refer to the quick reference that follows for the settings needed to define an SSL address object.

To create an address object for the NetExtender IP address range:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Policies | Objects > Address Objects**.
- 2 Click **Add**.
- 3 Type a descriptive name in the **Name** field.
- 4 For **Zone Assignment**, select **SSLVPN**.
- 5 For **Type**, select **Range**.
- 6 In the **Starting IP Address** field, type in the lowest IP address in the range you want to use.

i | **NOTE:** The IP address range must be on the same subnet as the interface used for SSL VPN services.

- 7 In the **Ending IP Address** field, type in the highest IP address in the range you want to use.
- 8 Click **ADD**.
- 9 Click **CLOSE**.

Setting Up Access

NetExtender client routes are used to allow and deny access for SSL VPN users to various network resources. Address objects are used to easily and dynamically configure access to network resources.

Tunnel All mode routes all traffic to and from the remote user over the SSL VPN NetExtender tunnel—including traffic destined for the remote user’s local network. This is done by adding the following routes to the remote client’s route table:

Routes to be Added to Remote Client’s Route Table

IP Address	Subnet mask
0 . 0 . 0 . 0	0 . 0 . 0 . 0
0 . 0 . 0 . 0	128 . 0 . 0 . 0
128 . 0 . 0 . 0	128 . 0 . 0 . 0

NetExtender also adds routes for the local networks of all connected Network Connections. These routes are configured with higher metrics than any existing routes to force traffic destined for the local network over the SSL VPN tunnel instead. For example, if a remote user is has the IP address 10 . 0 . 67 . 64 on the 10 . 0 . * . * network, the route 10 . 0 . 0 . 0 / 255 . 255 . 0 . 0 is added to route traffic through the SSL VPN tunnel.

NOTE: To configure **Tunnel All** mode, you must also configure an address object for 0 . 0 . 0 . 0, and assign SSL VPN NetExtender users and groups to have access to this address object.

Administrators also have the ability to run batch file scripts when NetExtender connects and disconnects. The scripts can be used to map or disconnect network drives and printers, launch applications, or open files or Web sites. NetExtender Connection Scripts can support any valid batch file commands.

Configuring Proxies

SonicWall SSL VPN supports NetExtender sessions using proxy configurations. Currently, only HTTPS proxy is supported. When launching NetExtender from the Web portal and if your browser is already configured for proxy access, NetExtender automatically inherits the proxy settings. The proxy settings can also be manually configured in the NetExtender client preferences. NetExtender can automatically detect proxy settings for proxy servers that support the Web Proxy Auto Discovery (WPAD) Protocol.

NetExtender provides three options for configuring proxy settings:

- **Automatically detect settings** - To use this setting, the proxy server must support Web Proxy Auto Discovery Protocol), which can push the proxy settings script to the client automatically.
- **Use automatic configuration script** - If you know the location of the proxy settings script, you can select this option and provide the URL of the script.
- **Use proxy server** - You can use this option to specify the IP address and port of the proxy server. Optionally, you can enter an IP address or domain in the **BypassProxy** field to allow direct connections to those addresses and bypass the proxy server. If required, you can enter a user name and password for the proxy server. If the proxy server requires a username and password, but you do not specify them, a NetExtender pop-up window will prompt you to enter them when you first connect.

When NetExtender connects using proxy settings, it establishes an HTTPS connection to the proxy server instead of connecting to the firewall server directly. The proxy server then forwards traffic to the SSL VPN server. All traffic is encrypted by SSL with the certificate negotiated by NetExtender, of which the proxy server has no knowledge. The connecting process is identical for proxy and non-proxy users.

Installing the Stand-Alone Client

The first time a user launches NetExtender, the NetExtender stand-alone client is automatically installed on the user's PC or Mac, or the installer can be downloaded and run on the user's system. The installer creates a profile based on the user's login information. The installer window then closes and automatically launches NetExtender. If the user has a legacy version of NetExtender installed, the installer uninstalls or requests the user to uninstall the old NetExtender first and then can install the new version.

Once the NetExtender stand-alone client has been installed, Windows users can launch NetExtender from their PC's **Start > Programs** menu or system tray and can configure NetExtender to launch when Windows boots. Mac users can launch NetExtender from their system **Applications** folder, or drag the icon to the dock for quick access. On Linux systems, the installer creates a desktop shortcut in **/usr/share/NetExtender**. This can be dragged to the shortcut bar in environments like Gnome and KDE.

- NOTE:** Complete instructions for installing NetExtender on a SonicWall appliance can be found in [How to setup SSL-VPN feature \(NetExtender Access\) on SonicOS 5.9 & above \(SW10657\)](#) in the Knowledge Base.
- VIDEO:** The video, [How to configure SSL VPN](#), also explains the procedure for configuring NetExtender.

Configuring Users for SSL VPN Access

For users to be able to access SSL VPN services, they must be assigned to the **SSLVPN Services** group. Users attempting to login through the Virtual Office and who do not belong to the **SSLVPN Services** group are denied access.

Topics:

- [For Local Users](#)
- [For RADIUS and LDAP Users](#)
- [For Tunnel All Mode Access](#)

For Local Users

The detailed process for adding and configuring local users and groups is described in *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup*, in the **Users** section. The following is a quick reference, listing the User settings needed to enable SSLVPN Services.

To configure SSL VPN access for local users:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | System Setup | Users > Local Users & Groups**.
- 2 Click the **Edit** icon for the user you want to set up, or click the **Add User** button to create a new user.
- 3 Select **Groups**.
- 4 In the **User Groups** column, select **SSLVPN Services** and click the **Right Arrow** to move it to the **Member Of** column.

- 5 Select **VPN Access** and move the appropriate network resources VPN users (GVC, NetExtender, or Virtual Office bookmarks) to the **Access List**.

NOTE: The **VPN Access** settings affect the ability of remote clients using GVC, NetExtender, and SSL VPN Virtual Office bookmarks to access network resources. To allow GVC, NetExtender, or Virtual Office users to access a network resource, the network address objects or groups must be added to the **Access List** on **VPN Access**.

- 6 Click **OK**.

For RADIUS and LDAP Users

The procedure for configuring RADIUS user and LDAP users is similar. You need to add the users to the SSLVPN Services user group.

The detailed process for configuring user groups is described in *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup*, in the **Users** section. The following is a quick reference, listing the User settings needed to add users to the right group.

To configure SSL VPN access for RADIUS and LDAP users:

Common Steps	Setting Up RADIUS Users	Setting Up LDAP Users
1 Select the MANAGE view.		
2 Navigate to Users > Settings .		
3 Select Authentication .		
4 In the User authentication method field:	Select RADIUS or RADIUS + Local Users .	Select LDAP or LDAP + Local Users .
5 Select:	CONFIGURE RADIUS	CONFIGURE LDAP
6 Select:	RADIUS Users	Users & Groups
7 Select SSLVPN Services in the appropriate field:	Default user group to which all RADIUS users belong	Default LDAP User Group
8 Click OK .		


For Tunnel All Mode Access

The detailed process for adding and configuring local users and groups is described in *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup*, in the **Users** section. The following is a quick reference, listing the User settings needed to set up users and groups for **Tunnel All** mode.

To configure SSL VPN NetExtender users and groups for Tunnel All Mode:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | System Setup | Users > Local Users & Groups**.
- 2 Click the **Configure** icon for an SSL VPN NetExtender user or group.
- 3 Select **VPN Access**.
- 4 Select the **WAN RemoteAccess Networks** address object and click the **Right Arrow** button to move it to the **Access List**.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Repeat the processes for all local users and groups that use SSL VPN NetExtender.

Biometric Authentication

 **IMPORTANT:** To use biometric authentication, Mobile Connect 4.0 or higher must be installed on the mobile device and configured to connect with the firewall.

SonicOS supports biometric authentication in conjunction with SonicWall Mobile Connect. Mobile Connect is an app that allows users to securely access private networks from a mobile device. With Mobile Connect 4.0 or higher, you can use finger-touch for authentication as a substitute for username and password.

The configuration settings to allow this method of authentication are on the **SSL VPN > Client Settings** page. These options only show when Mobile Connect is used to connect to the firewall.

After configuring biometric authentication on the **SSL VPN > Client Settings** page, Touch ID (iOS) or Fingerprint Authentication (Android) need to be enabled on the user's smart phone or other mobile device.

Configuring SSL VPN Server Behavior

The **SSL VPN > Server Settings** page configures the firewall to act as an SSL VPN server.

SSL VPN Status on Zones

i This is the SSL VPN Access status on each Zone. Green indicates active SSL VPN status. Red indicates inactive SSL VPN status. Enable or disable SSL-VPN access by clicking the zone name.

● LAN
 ● WAN
 ● DMZ
 ● WLAN

SSL VPN Server Settings

SSL VPN Port:

Certificate Selection:

User Domain:

Enable Web Management over SSL VPN:

Enable SSH Management over SSL VPN:

Inactivity Timeout (minutes):

RADIUS User Settings

Use RADIUS in MSCHAP MSCHAPv2 mode (allows users to change expired passwords)

SSL VPN Client Download URL

[Click here](#) to download the SSL VPN zip file which includes all SSL VPN client files.

Use customer's HTTP server as downloading URL: (http://)

Topics:

- [SSL VPN Status on Zones](#)
- [SSL VPN Server Settings](#)
- [RADIUS User Settings](#)
- [SSL VPN Client Download URL](#)

SSL VPN Status on Zones

SSL VPN Status on Zones

 This is the SSL VPN Access status on each Zone. **Green** indicates active SSL VPN status. **Red** indicates inactive SSL VPN status. Enable or disable SSL-VPN access by clicking the zone name.

 LAN  WAN  DMZ  WLAN

This section displays the SSL VPN Access status on each zone:

- Green indicates active SSL VPN status.
- Red indicates inactive SSL VPN status.

Enable or disable SSL VPN access by clicking the zone name.

SSL VPN Server Settings

SSL VPN Server Settings

SSL VPN Port:	<input type="text" value="4433"/>
Certificate Selection:	<input type="text" value="Use Selfsigned Certificate"/>
User Domain:	<input type="text" value="LocalDomain"/>
Enable Web Management over SSL VPN:	<input type="text" value="Disabled"/>
Enable SSH Management over SSL VPN:	<input type="text" value="Disabled"/>
Inactivity Timeout (minutes):	<input type="text" value="10"/>

To configure the SSL VPN server settings:

- 1 **SSL VPN Port** - Enter the SSL VPN port number in the field. The default is **4433**.
- 2 **Certificate Selection** – From this drop-down menu, select the certificate that used to authenticate SSL VPN users. The default method is **Use Selfsigned Certificate**.
- 3 **User Domain** – Enter the user’s domain, which must match the domain field in the NetExtender client. The default is **LocalDomain**.
- 4 **Enable Web Management over SSL VPN** – To enable web management over SSL VPN, select **Enabled** from this drop-down menu. The default is **Disabled**.
- 5 **Enable SSH Management over SSL VPN** – To enable SSH management over SSL VPN, select **Enabled** from this drop-down menu. The default is **Disabled**.
- 6 **Inactivity Timeout (minutes)** – Enter the number of minutes of inactivity before logging out the user. The default is **10** minutes.
- 7 Click **ACCEPT** at the bottom of the page.

RADIUS User Settings

This section is applicable when either RADIUS or LDAP is configured to authenticate SSL VPN users on the **Users > Settings** page. Enabling MSCHAP-mode for RADIUS allows users to change expired passwords when they log in.

To configure MSCHAP or MSCHAPv2 mode:

- 1 Select the **Use RADIUS in** checkbox.
- 2 Select one of these two modes:
 - **MSCHAP**
 - **MSCHAPV2**

i **NOTE:** In LDAP, passwords can only be changed when using Active Directory with TLS and binding to it using an administrative account or when using Novell eDirectory.
If this option is set when LDAP is selected as the authentication method of login on the **Users > Settings** page, but LDAP is not configured in a way that allows password updates, then password updates for SSL VPN users are performed using MSCHAP-mode RADIUS after using LDAP to authenticate the user.

- 3 Click **ACCEPT** at the bottom of the page.

SSL VPN Client Download URL

In this section of the page, you set up where the client system downloads the SSL VPN client from. You can download the files from the appliance and put them on your web server to provide your own server to host this client package. Otherwise, clients can download the SSL VPN files from the firewall.



To configure your own web server for SSL VPN client file downloads:

- 1 Select the link in **Click here to download the SSL VPN zip file which includes all SSL VPN client files** to download the all the client SSL VPN files from the appliance. Open and unzip the file, and then put the folder on your HTTP server.
- 2 Select the **Use customer's HTTP server as downloading URL: (http://)** checkbox and enter your SSL VPN client download URL in the supplied field.
- 3 Click **ACCEPT**.

Configuring SSL VPN Client Settings

On the **SSL VPN > Client Settings** page, you can edit the Default Device Profile and the SonicPointN Layer 3 Management Default Device Profile. The Default Device Profile enables SSL VPN access on zones, configures client routes, and configures the client DNS and NetExtender settings. The SonicPointN Layer 3 Management Default Device Profile contains setting for configuring SSL VPN access, client routes, and the Layer 3 settings for clients connecting via SonicPoint/SonicWave wireless access points.

The **SSL VPN > Client Settings** page also displays the configured IPv4 and IPv6 network addresses and zones that have SSL VPN access enabled.

Default Device Profile						
Name	Description	Address for IPv4	Zone for IPv4	Address for IPv6	Zone for IPv6	Configure
Default Device Profile	Default Device Profile	?	Unknown	?	Unknown	 

SonicPoint/SonicWave L3 Management Default Device Profile				
Name	Description	Address	Zone	Configure
Default Device Profile for SonicPointN	Default Device Profile for SonicPointN	?	Unknown	 

Topics:

- [Configuring the Default Device Profile](#)
- [Configuring Device Profile Settings for IPv6](#)
- [Configuring the SonicPoint L3 Management Default Device Profile](#)

Configuring the Default Device Profile

Edit the Default Device Profile to select the zones and NetExtender address objects, configure client routes, and configure the client DNS and NetExtender settings.

SSL VPN access must be enabled on a zone before users can access the Virtual Office web portal. SSL VPN Access can be configured on the **MANAGE | System Setup | Network > Zones** page. Refer to the *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup* administration documentation in the Network section for more information.

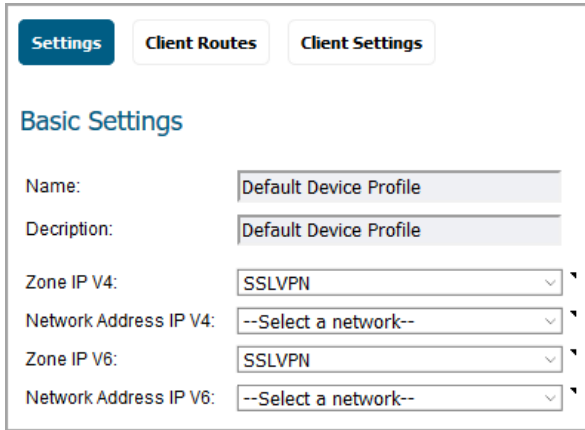
Topics:

- [Configuring the Settings Options](#)
- [Configuring the Client Routes](#)
- [Configuring Client Settings](#)

Configuring the Settings Options

To configure the Settings options for the Default Device Profile:

- 1 Navigate to the **MANAGE | Connectivity | SSL VPN > Client Settings** page.
- 2 Click the **Edit** icon for the **Default Device Profile**.



The screenshot shows the 'Client Settings' configuration page for the 'Default Device Profile'. The page has three tabs: 'Settings', 'Client Routes', and 'Client Settings', with 'Client Settings' being the active tab. Under the 'Basic Settings' section, there are six fields:

- Name:** Default Device Profile
- Description:** Default Device Profile
- Zone IP V4:** SSLVPN
- Network Address IP V4:** --Select a network--
- Zone IP V6:** SSLVPN
- Network Address IP V6:** --Select a network--

NOTE: The **Name** and **Description** of the **Default Device Profile** cannot be changed.

- 3 In the **Zone IP V4** drop-down menu, choose **SSLVPN** or a custom zone to set the zone binding for this profile.
- 4 From the **Network Address IP V4** drop-down menu, select the IPv4 NetExtender address object that you created for this profile. Refer to [Creating an Address Object for the NetExtender Range](#) on page 111 for instructions. This setting selects the IP Pool and zone binding for this profile. The NetExtender client gets the IP address from this address object if it matches this profile.
- 5 In the **Zone IP V6** drop-down menu, choose **SSLVPN** or a custom zone to set the zone binding for this profile.
- 6 From the **Network Address IP V6** drop-down menu, select the IPv6 NetExtender address object that you created.
- 7 Click **OK** to save settings and close the window or proceed to [Configuring the Client Routes](#) on page 120.

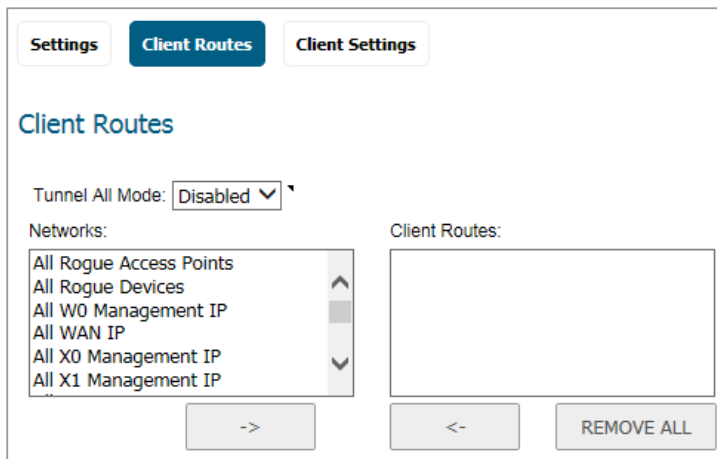
Configuring the Client Routes

On **Client Routes**, you can control the network access allowed for SSL VPN users. The NetExtender client routes are passed to all NetExtender clients and are used to govern which private networks and resources remote users can access via the SSL VPN connection.

To configure the client routes:

- 1 Navigate to the **MANAGE | Connectivity | SSL VPN > Client Settings** page.
- 2 Click the **Edit** icon for the **Default Device Profile**.

3 Select Client Routes.



- 4 To force all traffic for NetExtender users over the SSL VPN NetExtender tunnel—including traffic destined for the remote user’s local network, select **Enabled** from the **Tunnel All Mode** drop-down list.
- 5 Under **Networks**, select an address object to which you want to allow SSL VPN access.
- 6 Click the **Right Arrow** button to move the address object to the **Client Routes** list.
- 7 Repeat until you have moved all the address objects you want to use for Client Routes.

Creating client routes creates access rules automatically. You can also manually configure access rules for the SSL VPN zone. Refer to *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 Policies* for details about access rules.

- 8 Click **OK** to save the settings and close the window or proceed to [Configuring Client Settings](#) on page 121.

Configuring Client Settings

The Client Settings screen has two sections containing options:

- SSLVPN Client DNS Setting
- NetExtender Client Settings

To configure Client Settings:

- 1 Navigate to the **MANAGE | Connectivity | SSL VPN > Client Settings** page.
- 2 Click the **Edit** icon for the **Default Device Profile**.

- 3 Select **Client Settings**. The top of the screen displays the **SSLVPN Client DNS Setting** section.

The screenshot shows the 'SSLVPN Client DNS Setting' configuration interface. It includes the following elements:

- DNS Server 1:** Input field containing '0.0.0.0' with a dropdown arrow on the right.
- DNS Server 2:** Input field containing '0.0.0.0'.
- DEFAULT DNS SETTINGS:** A button located to the right of the DNS Server 1 field.
- DNS Search List (in order):** An empty input field followed by an 'ADD' button.
- Search List:** A list box containing no items, with up and down arrow buttons on the right side.
- REMOVE:** A button located below the search list.
- WINS Server 1:** Input field containing '0.0.0.0' with a dropdown arrow on the right.
- WINS Server 2:** Input field containing '0.0.0.0'.

- 4 In the **DNS Server 1** field, either:

- Enter the IP address of the primary DNS server.
- Click **DEFAULT DNS SETTINGS** to use the default settings for both the **DNS Server 1** and **DNS Server 2** fields. The fields are populated automatically.

i | **NOTE:** Both IP v4 and IP v6 are supported.

- 5 (Optional) In the **DNS Server 2** field, if you did not click **Default DNS Settings**, enter the IP address of the backup DNS server.

- 6 (Optional) To build a **DNS Search List**:

- a In the **DNS Search List (in order)** field, enter the IP address for a DNS server.
- b Click **ADD** to add it to the list below.
- c Repeat as many times as necessary.

To reorder the list, select one of the addresses and then use the up and down arrow buttons to reposition it. To remove an address from the list, select it and click **REMOVE**.

- 7 (Optional) In the **WINS Server 1** field, enter the IP address of the primary WINS server.

i | **NOTE:** Only IPv4 is supported.

- 8 (Optional) In the **WINS Server 2** field, enter the IP address of the backup WINS server.

- 9 To customize the behavior of NetExtender when users connect and disconnect, scroll down to **NetExtender Client Settings**.

NetExtender Client Settings

Enable Client Autoupdate: ▾

Exit Client After Disconnect: ▾

Allow Touch ID on IOS devices: ▾

Allow Fingerprint Authentication on Android devices: ▾

Enable NetBIOS over SSLVPN: ▾

Uninstall Client After Exit: ▾

Create Client Connection Profile: ▾

User Name & Password Caching: ▾

- 10 Select **Enabled** or **Disabled** for each of the following settings. By default, all are set to **Disabled**.

NetExtender Client Settings	Definition
Enable Client Autoupdate	The NetExtender client checks for updates every time it is launched.
Exit Client After Disconnect	The NetExtender client exits when it becomes disconnected from the SSL VPN server. To reconnect, users have to either return to the SSL VPN portal or launch the NetExtender client on their local system.
Allow Touch ID on IOS devices	The NetExtender client allows Touch ID authentication on IOS smart phones.
Allow Fingerprint Authentication on Android devices	The NetExtender client allows fingerprint authentication on Android devices.
Enable NetBIOS over SSL VPN	The NetExtender client allows NetBIOS protocol.
Uninstall Client After Exit	The NetExtender client uninstalls when it becomes disconnected from the SSL VPN server. To reconnect, users have to return to the SSL VPN portal.
Create Client Connection Profile	The NetExtender client creates a connection profile recording the SSL VPN Server name, the Domain name, and optionally the username and password.

- 11 To provide flexibility in allowing users to cache their usernames and passwords in the NetExtender client, select one of these actions from the **User Name & Password Caching** field. These options enable you to balance security needs against ease of use for users.

- **Allow saving of user name only**
- **Allow saving of user name & password**
- **Prohibit saving of user name & password**

- 12 Click **OK**.

Configuring Device Profile Settings for IPv6

SonicOS supports NetExtender connections for users with IPv6 addresses. On the **SSL VPN > Client Settings** page, first configure the traditional IPv4 IP address pool, and then configure an IPv6 IP Pool. Clients will be assigned two internal addresses: one IPv4 and one IPv6.

NOTE: IPv6 Wins Server is not supported.

On the **SSL VPN > Client Routes** page, you can select client routes from the drop-down list of all address objects including all the pre-defined IPv6 address objects.

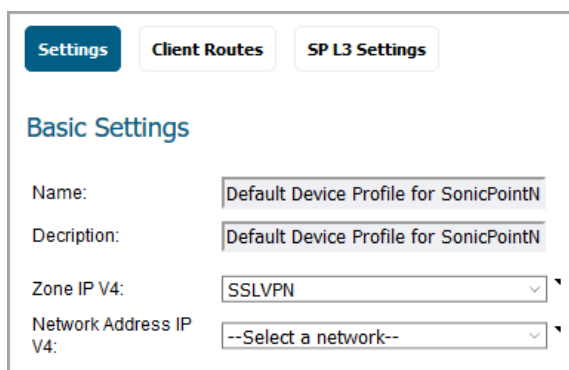
NOTE: IPv6 FQDN is supported.

Configuring the SonicPoint L3 Management Default Device Profile

This section describes how to configure SSL VPN access, client routes, and the Layer 3 settings for clients connecting via SonicPoint/SonicWave wireless access points.

To configure the settings for the SonicPoint L3 Default Device profile:

- 1 Navigate to the **MANAGE | Connectivity | SSL VPN > Client Settings** page.
- 2 Click the **Edit** icon for the **SonicPoint L3 Management Default Device Profile**.

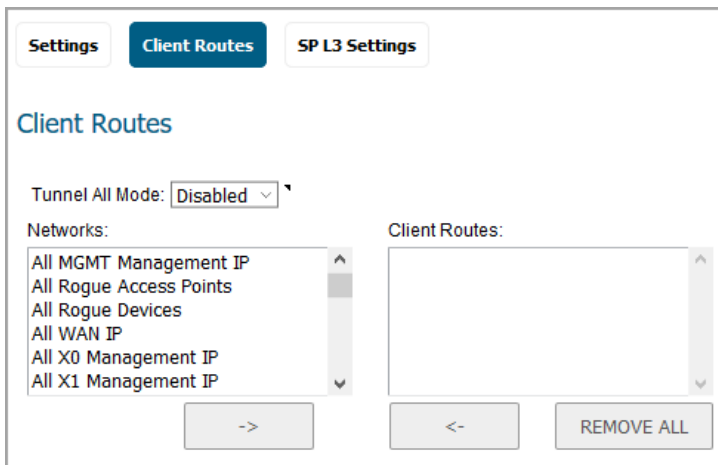


The screenshot shows a configuration interface with three tabs: 'Settings', 'Client Routes', and 'SP L3 Settings'. The 'Settings' tab is active. Under the heading 'Basic Settings', there are four fields: 'Name' with the value 'Default Device Profile for SonicPointN', 'Description' with the value 'Default Device Profile for SonicPointN', 'Zone IP V4' with a dropdown menu showing 'SSLVPN', and 'Network Address IP V4' with a dropdown menu showing '--Select a network--'.

NOTE: The **Name** and **Description** of the **SonicPoint L3 Management Default Device Profile** cannot be changed.

- 3 On the **Settings** screen, select **SSLVPN** or a custom zone from the **Zone IP V4** drop-down list to set up the zone binding for this profile.
- 4 For **Network Address IP V4**, select the IPv4 NetExtender address object that you created or select **Create new network** to create one now. Refer to [Creating an Address Object for the NetExtender Range](#) on page 111 for instructions. This setting selects the IP address pool for this profile. The NetExtender client gets an IP address from the range defined in this address object if it matches this profile.

- 5 Click **Client Routes**.

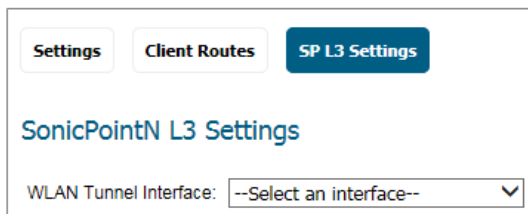


- 6 To force all traffic for NetExtender users over the SSL VPN NetExtender tunnel—including traffic destined for the remote user’s local network, select **Enabled** from the **Tunnel All Mode** drop-down list.
- 7 From the **Networks** list, select an address object for which you want to allow SSL VPN access.
- 8 Click the **Right Arrow** to move the address object to the **Client Routes** list.
- 9 Repeat until you have moved all the address objects you want to use for Client Routes.

Creating client routes causes access rules allowing this access to be created automatically. You can also manually configure access rules for the SSL VPN zone on the **MANAGE | Policies | Rules > Access Rules** page. Refer to *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 Policies* for details about access rules.

i **NOTE:** After configuring Client Routes for SSL VPN, you must also configure all SSL VPN NetExtender users and user groups to be able to access the Client Routes. Refer to [Configuring Users for SSL VPN Access](#) on page 113 for a quick reference list.

- 10 Click **SP L3 Settings**.



- 11 Select an interface from the **WLAN Tunnel Interface** drop-down list. The WLAN Tunnel Interface must already be configured. You can configure it by selecting **WLAN Tunnel Interface** in the **Add Interface** field on the **MANAGE | System Setup | Network > Interfaces** page. See *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup* for more information.
- 12 Click **OK**.

Configuring the SSL VPN Web Portal

On the **SSL VPN > Portal Settings** page, you configure the appearance and functionality of the SSL VPN Virtual Office web portal. The Virtual Office portal is the website where users log in to launch NetExtender or access internal resources by clicking Bookmarks. It can be customized to match any existing company website or design style.

Portal Settings

Portal Site Title:

Portal Banner Title:

Home Page Message: EXAMPLE TEMPLATE PREVIEW

Login Message: EXAMPLE TEMPLATE PREVIEW


Launch NetExtender after login.

Enable HTTP meta tags for cache control (recommended)

Display UTM management link on SSL VPN portal(not recommended)

Portal Logo Settings

i The logo must be GIF format of size 155 x 36. A transparent or light background is recommended.

Default Portal Logo: 

Use Default SonicWall Logo

Customized Logo(Input URL of the Logo):

Topics:

- [Portal Settings](#)
- [Portal Logo Settings](#)

Portal Settings

The portal settings customize what the user sees when attempting to log in. Configure the options as needed to match your company's requirements.


Option	Definition
Portal Site Title	Enter the text to display as the top title of the portal page in this field. The default is SonicWall - Virtual Office .
Portal Banner Title	Enter the text to display next to the logo at the top of the page in this field. The default is Virtual Office .
Home Page Message	Enter the HTML code for the message to display above the NetExtender icon. Type your own text or click EXAMPLE TEMPLATE to populate the field with a default template that you can keep or edit. Click PREVIEW to see what the Home Page Message looks like.
Login Message	Enter the HTML code for the message to display when users are prompted to log into the Virtual Office. Type your own text or click EXAMPLE TEMPLATE to populate the field with a default template that you can keep or edit. Click PREVIEW to see what the Login Message looks like.

The following options customize the functionality of the Virtual Office portal:

- **Launch NetExtender after login** - Select to launch NetExtender automatically after a user logs in. This option is not selected by default.
- **Enable HTTP meta tags for cache control recommended)** - Select to insert into the browser HTTP tags that instruct the web browser not to cache the Virtual Office page. This option is not selected by default.

 **NOTE:** SonicWall recommends enabling this option.


- **Display UTM management link on SSL VPN portal (not recommended)** – Select to display the SonicWall appliance’s management link on the SSL VPN portal. This option is not selected by default.

 **IMPORTANT:** SonicWall does not recommend enabling this option.

Portal Logo Settings

This section describes the settings for configuring the logo displayed at the top of the Virtual Office portal.

- **Default Portal Logo** – Displays the default portal logo which is the SonicWall logo.
- **Use Default SonicWall Logo** – Select this check box to use the SonicWall logo supplied with the appliance. This option is not selected by default.
- **Customized Logo (Input URL of the Logo)** — Enter the URL for the logo you want to display.

 **TIP:** The logo must be in GIF format of size 155 x 36. A transparent or light background is recommended.

Configuring Virtual Office

The **SSL VPN > Virtual Office** page displays the Virtual Office web portal inside of the SonicOS management interface.

The screenshot shows the SonicWall Virtual Office web portal. At the top, it says "SONICWALL Virtual Office" and "Welcome, admin!" with a "Logout" button. Below this is an information icon and a message: "Many popular browsers (including Chrome, Firefox and Edge) have stopped supporting NPAPI plugins. As a result, Virtual Assist, Virtual Access and Request Assistance cannot be launched from the Virtual Office using browsers that do not support the plugin. Please download and install the Virtual Assist client using the provided download links. Please config the DNS before downloading the Virtual Assist client". Below the message are two links: "Click here to download Windows NetExtender Client" and "Click here to download Virtual Assist Client". There is a "NetExtender" button with a "Help >>" link. Below this is a "Virtual Office Bookmarks" section with a dropdown arrow, a table header with columns "Host/IP Address", "Service", and "Configure", and the text "No Bookmarks". There are "ADD" and "DELETE ALL" buttons. At the bottom, it says "Copyright © 2018 SonicWall, Inc."

Topics:

- [Accessing the Virtual Office Portal](#)
- [Using NetExtender](#)
- [Configuring SSL VPN Bookmarks](#)

Accessing the Virtual Office Portal

You can access the Virtual Office Portal two different ways. System administrators can access it through the appliance interface and have rights to make changes applicable to the entire site. User access it through a different process and can only make changes that affect their particular profile.

For system administrators to access the SSL VPN Virtual Office portal:

- 1 Select the **MANAGE** view.
- 2 Under **Connectivity**, select **SSL VPN > Virtual Office**.

For users to view the SSL VPN Virtual Office web portal:

- 1 Navigate to the IP address of the firewall.
- 2 Click the link at the bottom of the Login page that says **Click [here](#) for sslvpn login**.

Using NetExtender

SonicWall NetExtender is a transparent software application that enables remote users to securely connect to the remote network. With NetExtender, remote users can securely run any application on the remote network. Users can upload and download files, mount network drives, and access resources as if they were on the local network. The NetExtender connection uses a Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) connection. The Virtual Office portal displays the **NetExtender** button.

Users can access NetExtender two ways:

- Logging in to the Virtual Office portal provided by the SonicWall security appliance and clicking on the **NetExtender** button.
- Launching the standalone NetExtender client. The NetExtender client can be installed when you launch NetExtender from the Virtual Office portal. Thereafter, it can be accessed directly from the user's PC as you would with any other client application.

NetExtender displays a popup window when launched. The SonicWall server is pre-populated with the server used for the initial NetExtender launch and client download. The domain will also be populated with the corresponding domain. The user enters username and password and then clicks **Connect**.

After the connection is established, the NetExtender window provides three screens: **Status**, **Routes**, and **DNS**. The **Status** screen displays the server, client IP address, the number of kilobytes sent and received, and the throughput in bytes per second. The **Routes** screen displays the destination subnet IP addresses and corresponding netmasks. The **DNS** screen displays the DNS servers, DNS suffix, and WINS servers. The routes and DNS settings are controlled by the SonicOS administrator on the SonicWall appliance.

Users can close the NetExtender window once the connection is established. The connection stays open, while the window is minimized and can be reopened from the system tray (on Windows).

See [About NetExtender](#) on page 110 for additional information about NetExtender.

Configuring SSL VPN Bookmarks

User bookmarks can be defined to appear on the Virtual Office home page. Individual users cannot modify or delete bookmarks created by the administrator.

When creating bookmarks, remember that some services can run on non-standard ports, and some expect a path when connecting. When you configure a portal bookmark, you need to match the **Service** type with the right format for the **Name or IP Address**. Refer to the following table when setting those options.

NOTE: Service types for ActiveX and Java do not exist in SonicOS 6.5. Preferences from older versions convert to HTML5 during an upgrade.

Bookmark Name or IP Address Formats by Service Type

Service Type	Format	Example for Name or IP Address Field
RDP - ActiveX	IP Address	10.20.30.4
	IP:Port (non-standard)	10.20.30.4:6818
	FQDN	JBONES-PC.sv.us.sonicwall.com
	Host name	JBONES-PC
VNC	IP Address	10.20.30.4
	IP:Port (mapped to session)	10.20.30.4:5901 (mapped to session 1)
	FQDN	JBONES-PC.sv.us.sonicwall.com
	Host name	JBONES-PC
	NOTE: Do not use session or display number instead of port.	NOTE: Do not use 10.20.30.4:1 TIP: For a bookmark to a Linux server, see the Tip below this table.
Telnet	IP Address	10.20.30.4
	IP:Port (non-standard)	10.20.30.4:6818
	FQDN	JBONES-PC.sv.us.sonicwall.com
	Host name	JBONES-PC
SSHv1	IP Address	10.20.30.4
SSHv2	IP:Port (non-standard)	10.20.30.4:6818
	FQDN	JBONES-PC.sv.us.sonicwall.com
	Host name	JBONES-PC

IMPORTANT: When creating a **Virtual Network Computing (VNC)** bookmark to a Linux server, you must specify the port number and server number in addition to the Linux server IP the **Name or IP Address** field in the form of **ipaddress:port:server**. For example, if the Linux server IP address is 192.168.2.2, the port number is 5901, and the server number is 1, the value for the **Name or IP Address** field would be **192.168.2.2:5901:1**.

To add a portal bookmark:

- 1 Navigate to the **MANAGE | Connectivity | SSL VPN > Portal Office** page.

- 2 Click **ADD**.

Add Portal Bookmark

Bookmark Name:

Name or IP Address:

Service: ▼

Screen Size: ▼

Colors: ▼

Application and Path (optional):

Start in the following folder (optional):

▶ Show windows advanced options

Automatically log in

Use SSL-VPN account credentials
 Use custom credentials

Display Bookmark to Mobile Connect clients

- 3 Type a descriptive name for the bookmark in the **Bookmark Name** field.
- 4 In the **Name or IP Address** field, enter the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or the IPv4 address of a host machine on the LAN. Refer to the [Bookmark Name or IP Address Formats by Service Type](#) table for examples of the **Name or IP Address** expected for a given **Service** type.
- 5 In the **Service** drop-down menu, chose the appropriate service type:
 - **RDP (HTML5-RDP)**
 - **SSHv2 (HTML5-SSHv2)**
 - **TELNET (HTML5-TELNET)**
 - **VNC (HTML5-VNC)**

Different options display, depending on what you selected.

- 6 Complete the remaining fields for the service you selected. For the options and definitions, refer to the following table:

If Service is set to RDP (HTML5-RDP), configure the following:

Screen Size	<p>From the drop-down menu, choose the default terminal services screen size to be used when users execute this bookmark.</p> <p>Because different computers support different screen sizes, when you use a remote desktop application, you should select the size of the screen on the computer from which you are running a remote desktop session.</p>
Colors	In the drop-down menu, select the default color depth for the terminal service screen when users select this bookmark.
Application and Path (optional)	If you want, enter the local path to where your application resides on your remote computer.
Start in the following folder	If you want, enter the local folder from which to execute application commands.

Show windows advanced options	Click the arrow to expand this and see all the Windows advanced options. Check the box to enable those that you want: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Redirect clipboard • Auto reconnection • Window drag • Redirect audio • Desktop background • Menu/window animation
Automatically log in	Check the box to enable automatic login. If selected, choose which credentials to use: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use SSL-VPN account credentials • Use custom credentials If you choose custom credentials, enter the username, password and domain for the credentials. NOTE: You can use dynamic variables for the username and domain. Refer to the Dynamic variables table below.
Display Bookmark to Mobile Connect clients	Check the box to display the bookmarks to Mobile Connect users.
If Service is set to SSHv2 (HTML5-SSHv2), configure the following:	
Automatically accept host key	Check the box to enable.
Display Bookmark to Mobile Connect clients	Check the box to display the bookmarks to Mobile Connect users.
If Service is set to TELNET (HTML5-TELNET), configure the following:	
Display Bookmark to Mobile Connect clients	Check the box to display the bookmarks to Mobile Connect users.
If Service is set to VNC (HTML5-VNC), configure the following:	
View Only	Check the box to set the bookmark to view only mode.
Share Desktop	Enables the shared desktop feature.
Display Bookmark to Mobile Connect clients	Check the box to display the bookmarks to Mobile Connect users.

7 Click **OK** to save the configuration.

Dynamic variables

Text Usage	Variable	Example Usage
Login Name	%USERNAME%	US\%USERNAME%
Domain Name	%USERDOMAIN%	%USERDOMAIN%\%USERNAME%

Connectivity | Access Points

- [Understanding SonicWall Access Points](#)
- [Access Point Dashboard](#)
- [Access Point Base Settings](#)
- [Access Point Floor Plan](#)
- [Access Point Topology View](#)
- [Configuring SonicPoint Intrusion Detection Services](#)
- [Configuring Advanced IDP](#)
- [Access Point Packet Capture](#)
- [Configuring Virtual Access Points](#)
- [Configuring FairNet](#)
- [Configuring Wi-Fi MultiMedia](#)
- [Access Point 3G/4G/LTE WWAN](#)

Understanding SonicWall Access Points

SonicWall SonicPoint and SonicWave wireless access points are specially engineered to work with SonicWall security appliances to provide wireless access throughout your enterprise. **Connectivity | Access Points** on the **MANAGE** view of the SonicOS management interface lets you manage the access points connected to your appliance.

This section provides information and best practices on using SonicWall access points in your network and how you can integrate them with your SonicWall network appliance.

Topics:

- [Access Point Feature Matrix](#)
- [Access Point Features](#)
- [Planning and Site Survey](#)
- [Best Practices for Access Point Deployment](#)
- [Access Point Licensing](#)
- [Before Managing SonicPoint/SonicWaves](#)
- [Access Points and RADIUS Accounting](#)

Access Point Feature Matrix

Several features are available in SonicOS, but not all features are supported on all SonicWall access points. Refer to the following table for specifics.

Wireless Feature Support by Access Point Type

Feature Name	SonicWave	SonicPoint ACe/ACi	SonicPoint N2	SonicPoint Ne/Ni/NDR/N
Band Steering	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
AirTime Fairness	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Wireless Forensic Packet Capturing	Yes	No	No	No
WDS AP Support	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Floor Plan View	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Topology View	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
SSLVPN Concentrator	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Real Time Monitoring Visualization	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Dynamic VLAN	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Wireless Feature Support by Access Point Type

Feature Name	SonicWave	SonicPoint ACE/ACi	SonicPoint N2	SonicPoint Ne/Ni/NDR/N
3G/4G/LTE Extender	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Client Fingerprinting and Reporting	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
SNMP MIB Extension	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
GRE management multi-core Support	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Restful API Support	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Guest Service: IP-based guest authentication bypass network	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Guest Service: Cyclic quota for guest user group	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Native Bridge support	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Access Point Features

SonicWall access points integrate with SonicWall next-generation firewalls to create a secure wireless solution that delivers comprehensive protection for wired and wireless networks. They provide high-speed wireless access with enhanced signal quality and reliability that takes advantage of the latest capabilities to achieve gigabit wireless performance. With support for IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n/ac standards, the SonicPoint/SonicWave Series enables your organization for bandwidth-intensive mobile applications in high density environments without signal degradation.

Topics:

- [SonicPoint/SonicWave Capabilities](#)
- [Certifications and Compliance](#)
- [Access Point Floor Plan View](#)
- [Access Point Topology View](#)
- [Intrusion Detection/Prevention](#)
- [Virtual Access Points](#)
- [Access Point WMM Configuration](#)
- [Japanese and International Access Point Support](#)

SonicPoint/SonicWave Capabilities

SonicPoint/SonicWave access points provide higher throughput in the 5GHz band by providing more antennas, wider channels, more spatial streams, and other features that boost throughput and reliability. SonicPoint AC and SonicWave devices support both the 5GHz and 2.4GHz radio bands and have the following key technical components:

- **Wider Channels** — 80 MHz channel bandwidths, while still supporting 20 MHz and 40 MHz
- **Up to 4 Spatial Streams** — Adding spatial streams increases throughput proportionally. Two streams doubles the throughput of a single stream. Four streams increases the throughput four times.
- **Multi-User MIMO** — Multiple Input Multiple Output spatial division multiplexing provides transmitting and receiving of multiple independent data streams simultaneously.

SonicWave and SonicPoint AC provides higher throughput, making it better for wireless displays, HDTV, downloading large files, and campus and auditorium use.

- **Layer 3 Management Phase I** — Provides the DHCP and tunneling solution to support access point deployment in a Layer 3 network:
 - SonicWall DHCP-based Discovery Protocol (SDDP) is based on the well-known DHCP protocol and allows the SonicWall gateway and access point to discover each other automatically across Layer 3 local networks.
 - The remote network management protocol, SonicWall SSL VPN-based Management Protocol (SSMP), is based on SonicWall SSL VPN infrastructure to allow access points to be managed by a SonicWall SSL VPN enabled network security appliance over the Internet.
- **Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) Support** — After a DFS certificate is issued, the access points support dynamic frequency selection to allow an access point to be deployed in sensitive channels of the 5GHz frequency band.
- **Access Point Dashboard** — The **Access Point > Dashboard** page reports the statistics of each access point. The **Dashboard** summarizes bandwidth and client information in graphical form. It also provides real-time client monitoring details.
- **Band Steering** — Band Steering allows the access point to steer 5 GHz-capable clients to that band; it usually has less interference and less traffic. If, however, the signal has interference or is not as strong, the client will be directed to the 2.4 GHz band. The intent is to use radio management to help improve overall capacity, throughput and user experience.
- **Open Authentication, Social Login, and LHM** — Open Authentication and Social Login for social media such as Facebook, Twitter, and Google+. LHM (Lightweight Hotspot Message) is also supported.
- **Radio Frequency Analysis** — Radio Frequency Analysis (RFA) is a feature that helps the network administrator understand how wireless channels are utilized by the access points and other neighboring wireless access points.
- **Retaining SonicWave Profile Setting** — You can configure access point profiles so the access points retain portions of their configuration even after they are deleted or resynchronized.
- **VLAN Tagging** — Prioritization is possible in VLAN over Virtual Access Point (VAP) because the SonicPoint/SonicWave allows a VAP to be configured to connect with a VLAN by using same VLAN ID. You can set priority for VLAN traffic through a firewall access rule.
- **Wireless Diagnostics** — An access point can collect critical runtime data and save it into persistent storage. If the access point fails, the SonicWall managing appliance retrieves that data when the access point reboots, and incorporates it into the Tech Support Report (TSR). A subsequent access point failure overwrites the data.

- **Access Point 3G/4G WWAN** — Users can plug a USB modem device into a SonicWall access point and the access point can perform the dial-up operation to connect to the internet. Once connected, the access point acts as a WWAN devices for the firewall and provides WAN access.
- **Daisy Chaining** — Daisy chaining allows users with a small environment (that is, a low-density switch infrastructure) to deploy several access points while using as few switch ports as possible. For example, you can connect numerous devices scattered throughout a store into the store's switch infrastructure. This could include multiple access points to cover the entire store even though the infrastructure is small in terms of switch port density/availability. Access Points are daisy chained through the LAN2 interface.

i **IMPORTANT:** Daisy chaining access points affects throughput; each addition lessens the throughput. If throughput is:

- A concern, then to keep throughput at an acceptable level for the:
 - SonicPoint N2, daisy chain no more than three access points.
 - SonicPoint ACe/ACi, daisy chain no more than two access points.
- Not a concern, daisy chain no more than four access points.

If you have a mixture of SonicWave or SonicPoint AC models with SonicPoint N or N2 models, place the SonicWave or SonicPoint AC model at the beginning of the chain.

Certifications and Compliance

The SonicWall access points have passed rigorous testing to earn industry certifications.

Wi-Fi Alliance Certification

i **NOTE:** All SonicWall SonicWaves and SonicPoint Dual Radio (SonicPointNDR and SonicPointACe/ACi/N2) are Wi-Fi Certified by the Wi-Fi Alliance, designated by the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo.

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance, and indicates that the product has undergone rigorous testing by the Wi-Fi Alliance and has demonstrated interoperability with other products, including those from other companies that bear the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo.



FCC U-NII New Rule Compliance

FCC U-NII (Unlicensed –National Information Infrastructure) New Rule (Report and Order ET Docket No. 13-49) is supported on SonicPointACe/ACi/N2 running firmware version 9.0.1.0-2 or higher. To comply with FCC New Rules for Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS), a SonicPoint access point detects and avoids interfering with radar signals in DFS bands.

i **NOTE:** SonicPointACe/ACi/N2 wireless access points manufactured with FCC New Rule-compliant firmware are only supported with SonicOS 6.2.5.1 and higher. Older SonicPointACe/ACi/N2 access points are automatically updated to the FCC New Rule-compliant firmware when connected to a firewall running SonicOS 6.5.

RED Compliance & Certification

SonicWall wireless access points demonstrate compliance with the European Union's Radio Equipment Directive (RED). See the *Radio Equipment Directive (RED) Addendum* on the SonicWall Support portal under Technical Documentation:

[https://www.sonicwall.com/Support/Technical-Documentation/Radio-Equipment-Directive-\(RED\)-Addendum](https://www.sonicwall.com/Support/Technical-Documentation/Radio-Equipment-Directive-(RED)-Addendum).

Access Point Floor Plan View

SonicOS 6.5 allows for a visual approach to managing large number of SonicWall access point devices. You can also track physical location and real-time status.

Floor Plan View in SonicOS that provides the real-time picture of the actual access point radio deployment environment. It increases your ability to estimate the wireless coverage of new deployment. The Floor Plan View also provides the means to monitor real-time status, configure access points, remove access points, and even show the RF coverage from the consolidated the context menu.

Access Point Topology View

Access points can be managed by topology view which can present the network topology from SonicWall firewall to the endpoint. The access point real-time status can be monitored, and the context-menu can provide the configuration options as well.

This feature shows the logical relationship among all WLAN related devices and enabled managing devices directly in the Topology View. When opening **Connectivity | Access Points > Topology View**, a tree-like diagram is shown by connecting devices known to the firewall and showing their relationship.

Topology View management provides a graphic presentation of the WLAN network for administrators with the most often used information and status. The devices are drawn as nodes on a tree and the tree is zoomable with the mouse and mouse wheel. Information shown in the tree includes device type, IP address, interface connected to, name, number of clients, and simulated LED light on some devices showing status. A tool tip bubble shows detailed information of a device.

Intrusion Detection/Prevention

SonicWall access points provide protection for radio frequency (RF) devices. RF technology used in wireless networking devices is a target for intruders. The access points use direct RF monitoring to detect threats without interrupting the current operation of your wireless or wired network. Such features include:

- **Intrusion Detection Services** - Intrusion Detection Services (IDS) enables the SonicWall network security appliance to recognize and take countermeasures against this common type of illicit wireless activity. IDS reports on all access points that the firewall can find by scanning the 802.11a/b/g/n/ac radio bands on the access points.
- **Advanced Intrusion Detection and Prevention** - Advanced Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) monitors the radio spectrum for the presence of unauthorized access points (intrusion detection) and automatically takes countermeasures (intrusion prevention). When Advanced IDP is enabled on an access point, its radio functions as a dedicated IDP sensor.
- **Rogue Device Detection and Prevention** – An access point can be configured in dedicated sensor mode to focus on rogue device detection and prevention, either passively or proactively on both the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands. Both bands can be scanned even if only one is in use. The rogue device can be analyzed to report whether it is connected to the network and if it is blocked by a wired or wireless mechanism.

- **Built-in Wireless Radio Scan Schedule** – Access points can now be scheduled to perform Intrusion Detection/Prevention scanning with granular scheduling options to cover up to 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. The **Schedule IDS Scan** options are available on the **Radio 0/1 Advanced** or **Advanced** screens when editing access point profiles for all access point models.

Virtual Access Points

A Virtual Access Point (VAP) is a multiplexed instantiation of a single physical access point, so that a single access point appears as multiple discrete access points or VAPs. To wireless LAN clients, each VAP appears as an independent physical access point, when only one physical access point exists.

- **Virtual Access Point Schedule Support** – Each VAP schedule can be individually enabled or disabled, for ease of use.
- **Virtual Access Point Layer 2 Bridging** – Each VAP can be bridged to a corresponding VLAN interface on the LAN zone, providing better flexibility.
- **Virtual Access Point ACL Support** – Each VAP can support an individual Access Control List (ACL) to provide more effective authentication control.
- **Virtual Access Point Group Sharing on SonicPoint N Dual Radios** – The same VAP/VLAN settings can be applied to dual radios. This allows you to use a unified policy for both radios, and to share a VLAN trunk in the network switch.

Access Point WMM Configuration

The access points support Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) to provide a better Quality of Service experience on miscellaneous applications, including VoIP on Wi-Fi phones and multimedia traffic on wireless networks. WMM is a Wi-Fi Alliance interoperability certification based on the IEEE 802.11e standard. WMM prioritizes traffic according to four access categories: voice, video, best effort, and background.

 **NOTE:** WMM does not provide guaranteed throughput.


Each Access Category has its own transmit queue. WMM requires the access point to implement multiple queues for multiple priority access categories. The access point relies on either the application or the firewall to provide type of service (TOS) information in the IP data to differentiate traffic types. One way to provide TOS is through firewall services and access rules; another way is through VLAN tagging.

The **Connectivity | Access Points > Wi-Fi Multimedia** page on the **MANAGE** view provides a way to configure WMM settings and mappings.

Japanese and International Access Point Support

SonicOS supports both Japanese and international SonicPointACe/ACi/N2 and SonicWave 432e/432i/432o wireless access points. An international access point is one that is deployed and operating in a country other than the United States or Japan.

When an international access point is connected to a SonicWall network security appliance, SonicOS displays a **Register** button on the **Access Points > Base Settings** page. Clicking **Register** brings up a dialog in which you can select the appropriate **Country Code**.

 **NOTE:** Be sure to select the country code for the country in which the access point is deployed, even if you are not in that country while registering the access point.

For international access points registered with country codes other than Canada, the country code can be changed in the profile on the **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings** page.

i | **IMPORTANT:** When the access point is registered with the country code for Canada, the country code cannot be changed except by contacting SonicWall Support.

Planning and Site Survey

Before deploying SonicWall access points in your environment, take the time to understand the requirements for the equipment. The following sections describe the prerequisites for your deployment and identify the things to check as a part of a site survey.

Topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Site Survey and Planning](#)
- [PoE and PoE+](#)

Prerequisites

The following are required for a successful access point deployment:

- SonicOS requires public Internet access for the network security appliance to download and update the firmware images for the access points. If the public Internet is not accessible, you need to obtain and download the access point firmware manually.
- One or more SonicWall wireless access points.
- If you are using a PoE/PoE+ switch to power the access point, it must be one of the following:
 - An 802.3at-compliant Ethernet switch for SonicWave 432e/432i/432o
 - An 802.3at-compliant Ethernet switch for SonicPointACe/ACi/N2
 - An 802.3af-compliant Ethernet switch for other access point models
- You should obtain a support contract for your SonicWall network security appliance as well as the PoE/PoE+ switch. The contract allows you to update to new versions if issues are found on the switch side, on the firewall side, or when new features are released.
- Be sure to conduct a full site survey before installation to understand what needs to be done to prepare for installation and implementation.
- Check wiring and cable infrastructure to verify that end-to-end runs between the SonicWall access points and the Ethernet switches are CAT5, CAT5e, or CAT6.
- Check building codes for installation points, and work with the building's facilities staff, as some desired install points may violate regulations.

Site Survey and Planning

Performing a site survey and planning the SonicWall access point deployment is key to a successful implementation. Include the following guidelines in your survey and planning:

- Conduct a full site walk of all areas where access points will be deployed. Use a wireless spectrum scanner and note any existing access points and the channels they are broadcasting on. SonicWall currently recommends using Fluke or AirMagnet products to conduct the survey. You may also wish to try NetStumbler/MiniStumbler, a free product that does a decent job of surveying so long as it works with your wireless card.
- Get blueprints of floor plans to use during the survey. You can mark the position of access points and the range of the wireless cell. Make multiple copies of these as the site survey results may cause to start over with a new design. Also, you see where walls, halls, and elevators are located, which can influence the signal. Areas in which users are—and are not—located can be seen.

During the site-survey, watch for electrical equipment that may cause interference (microwaves, CAT scan equipment, etc.) In area's where a lot of electrical equipment is placed, also identify the type of cabling being used.

- Survey three dimensionally (side to side, front to back and side to side) as wireless signals cross over to different floors.
- Determine where you can locate access points based on power and cabling. Remember that you should not place access point close to metal or concrete walls, and you should put them as close to the ceiling as possible.
- Use the wireless scanning tool to check signal strengths and noise. Signal-to-noise ratio should at least be 10 dB (minimum requirements for 11 Mbps), however, 20 dB is preferred. Both factors influence the quality of the service.
- You may need to relocate some access point and re-test, depending of the results of your survey.
- Save settings, logs and note the location of the for future reference. You will want this information to build the Floor Plan View.
- When using older SonicPoint models, you may find that certain areas, or all areas, are saturated with existing overlapping 802.11b/g channels. If that happens you may wish to deploy the access points using the 802.11a radio. This provides a much larger array of channels to broadcast on, although the range of 802.11a is limited, and those devices do not allow additional external antennas.
- Be wary of broadcasting your wireless signal into areas that you do not control; check for areas where people might be able to leach signal and tune the access points accordingly.
- For light use, you can plan for 15-20 users for each access point. For business use, you should plan for 5-10 users for each access point.
- Plan for your roaming users—this requires tuning the power on each access point so that the signal overlap is minimal. Multiple access points broadcasting the same SSID in areas with significant overlap can cause ongoing client connectivity issues.
- Use the scheduling feature in SonicOS to shut off access point when not in use. SonicWall recommends that you do not operate your access points during non-business-hours (nights and weekends, for example).

PoE and PoE+

When planning, make sure you note the distance of cable runs from where the access point will be mounted; this must be no more than 100 meters. If you are not using PoE switches, you also need to consider a power adapter or PoE injector for the access point. Make sure you are not creating an electrical fire hazard.

Long cable runs cause loss of power; 100-meter runs between the access point and PoE switch may incur up to 16 percent power/signal degradation. Because of this, the PoE switch needs to supply more power to the port to keep the SonicPoint operational.

SonicPointACe/ACi/N2

Full 802.3at compliance is required on any switch supplying Power over Ethernet/Power over Ethernet plus (PoE/PoE+) to SonicPointACe/ACi/N2. Do not operate SonicPoints on non-compliant switches as SonicWall does not support it.

ⓘ | IMPORTANT: Turn off pre-802.3at-spec detection as it may cause connectivity issues.

SonicPoint ACs (Type 1) can be set to Class 0, 1, 2, or 3 PD. SonicPoint ACs (Type 2) are set to Class 4 PD. The minimum and maximum power output values are as follows:

- Type 1, Class 0 PD uses 0.5 W minimum to 15.4 W maximum
- Type 1, Class 1 PD uses 0.5 W minimum to 4.0 W maximum
- Type 1, Class 2 PD uses 4.0 W minimum to 7.0 W maximum
- Type 1, Class 3 PD uses 7.0 W minimum to 15.4 W maximum
- Type 2, Class 4 PD uses 15.4 W minimum to 30 W maximum

ⓘ | IMPORTANT: A mismatch in Class causes confusion in the handshake and reboots the SonicPoint access point.

Ensure that each SonicWave or SonicPointACe/ACi/N2 is guaranteed to get 25 watts.

Be particularly careful to ensure all PoE/PoE+ switches can provide a minimum of 25 watts of power to each of its PoE ports. For example, a port that supports a SonicPointACe/ACi/N2 needs 25 watts of power. If a switch cannot guarantee each port 25 watts to each port, an external redundant power supply must be added. You need to work closely with the manufacturer of the PoE/PoE+ switch to ensure that enough power is supplied to the switch to power all of your PoE/PoE+ devices.

Legacy and SonicPoint N/Ni/Ne/NDR

Legacy SonicPoints and SonicPoint N/Ni/Ne/NDR are set to Class 0 PD, which uses 0.44W minimum up to 12.95W maximum power.

Full 802.3af compliance is required on any switch supplying PoE to legacy SonicPoints and SonicPoint N/Ni/Ne/NDR. Do not operate SonicPoints on non-compliant switches as SonicWall does not support it.

Turn off pre-802.3af-spec detection as it may cause connectivity issues.

Ensure each port can get 10 watts guaranteed, and set the PoE priority to critical or high.

Best Practices for Access Point Deployment

This section provides SonicWall recommendations and best practices regarding the design, installation, deployment, and configuration issues for SonicWall's wireless access points. The information covered allows you to properly deploy the access points in environments of any size. This section also covers related external issues that are required for successful operation and deployment.

i **IMPORTANT:** SonicWall cannot provide any direct technical support for any of the third-party Ethernet switches referenced in this section. The material is also subject to change without SonicWall's knowledge when the switch manufacturer releases new models or firmware that might invalidate the information contained herein.

Topics:

- [Switches in the Infrastructure](#)
- [Wiring Considerations](#)
- [Channels](#)
- [Spanning-Tree](#)
- [VTP and GVRP Trunking Protocols](#)
- [Port-Aggregation](#)
- [Portshielding](#)
- [Broadcast Throttling/Broadcast Storm](#)
- [Speed and Duplex](#)
- [SonicPoint Auto Provisioning](#)

Switches in the Infrastructure

Most switches can be used in your SonicWall infrastructure. However some customized settings or programming may be required to ensure optimum performance.

Tested Switches

The following switches have been tested with SonicWall access points. Note the guidance provided for each.

- Cisco – Most Cisco switches work well; however, some issues were found with some models.
 - SonicWall does not recommend deploying SonicWall access points using the Cisco Express switch line of products.
 - SonicWall found SonicPointACe/ACi/N2 ethernet has energy efficient ethernet compatible issue with Cisco switch 2960X-PS-I. Disable EEE on SonicPoint connected port. Refer to the following Cisco documentation for more details:
http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/switches/lan/catalyst2960xr/software/15-0_2_EX1/int_h_w_components/configuration_guide/b_int_152ex1_2960-xr_cg/b_int_152ex1_2960-xr_cg_chapter_01001.pdf.
- D-Link PoE switches – Shut off all their proprietary broadcast control and storm control mechanisms, as they interfere with the provisioning and acquisition mechanisms on the access point.

- Dell – Be sure to configure STP for fast start on the access point ports.
- Extreme – Be sure to configure STP for fast start on the access point ports.
- Foundry – Be sure to configure STP for fast start on the access point ports.
- HP ProCurve – Be sure to configure STP for fast start on the access point ports.
- Netgear – SonicWall does not recommend deploying SonicWall access points using Netgear PoE switches

Switch Programming Tips

The following sections provide some sample switch commands that be used on switches in the SonicWall infrastructure. Refer to the appropriate vendor sample for details.

Sample Dell Switch Configuration (per Interface)

- spanning-tree portfast
- no back-pressure
- no channel-group
- duplex half (note: only if you are seeing FCS errors)
- speed 100
- no flowcontrol
- no gvrp enable
- no lldp enable
- mdix on
- mdix auto
- no port storm-control broadcast enable

Sample D-Link Switch Configuration

The D-Link PoE switches do not have a command line interface, so you need to use their web interface.

NOTE: If you are using multicast in your environment, check with D-Link for the recommended firmware version.

Disable spanning-tree, broadcast storm control, LLDP, and the Safeguard Engine on the switch before adding SonicWall access points to the switch. Those options may impact successful provisioning, configuration, and functionality of the access points.

Sample HP ProCurve Switch Commands (per Interface)

- name 'link to SonicPoint X' (or SonicWave X)
- no lacp
- no cdp
- power critical
- no power-pre-std-detect (note: global command)
- speed-duplex 100-half (note: only if you are seeing FCS errors)

- spanning-tree xx admin-edge-port (note: replace xx with port number)
- mdix-mode mdix

Wiring Considerations

Work with your facilities organization to be sure these wiring guidelines are considered for your implementation.

- Make sure wiring is CAT5, CAT5e, or CAT6 end to end.
- Due to signaling limitations in 802.3af and 802.3at, Ethernet cable runs should not extend over 100 meters between the PoE switch and the access point.
- Plan for PoE power loss as the cable run becomes longer; this can be up to 16 percent. For longer cable runs, the port requires more power to be supplied.

Channels

The default setting of SonicWall access point is **auto-channel**. When this is set, the access point does a scan at boot-up to check if other wireless devices are transmitting. Then, it looks for an unused channel to use for transmission. In larger deployments, this process might cause issues so consider assigning fixed channels to each access point.

TIP: A diagram of the SonicPoint/SonicWaves and their MAC Addresses helps to avoid overlaps. It is recommended to mark the location of the SonicPoint/SonicWaves and MAC Addresses on a floor-plan.

Spanning-Tree

When an Ethernet port becomes electrically active, most switches, by default, activate the spanning-tree protocol on the port to determine if there are loops in the network topology. During this detection period of 50-60 seconds, the port does not pass any traffic—this feature is known to cause problems with SonicWall access points.

If you do not need the spanning-tree protocol, disable it globally on the switch or disable it on each port connected to a SonicWall access point. If this is not possible, check with the switch manufacturer to determine if they allow *fast spanning-tree detection*, which runs spanning-tree in a shortened time so as to not cause connectivity issues. Refer to [Sample Dell Switch Configuration \(per Interface\)](#) for programming samples on how to do this.

VTP and GVRP Trunking Protocols

Turn these trunking protocols off on ports connected directly to the access points as they have been known to cause issues with SonicPoints, especially the high-end Cisco Catalyst series switches.

Port-Aggregation

Many switches have port aggregation turned on by default, which causes a lot of issues. Port aggregation should be deactivated on ports connected directly to SonicWall access points. PAGP/Fast EtherChannel/EtherChannel and LACP should also be turned off on the ports going to SonicWall access points.

Portshielding

SonicWall access points can be port-shielded by configuring them as a member of a PortShield group. If the access points are configured to an X-Series switch, the PortShield group it is a member of must be configured as a port for a dedicated link.

Broadcast Throttling/Broadcast Storm

The Broadcast Throttling/Broadcast Storm feature is an issue on some switches, especially D-Link. Disable on a per-port basis if possible, if not, disable globally.

Speed and Duplex

Speed and duplex options may sometimes cause issues for SonicWall access points. At present, **auto-negotiation** is the only option for speed and duplex on SonicWall access points. To resolve or avoid those issues consider the following:

- Lock speed and duplex on the switch and reboot the access point to help with connectivity issues.
- Check the port for errors, as this is the best way to determine if there is a duplex issue (the port also experiences degraded throughput).

SonicPoint Auto Provisioning

Topics:

- [Automatic Provisioning \(SDP & SSPP\)](#)
- [Enabling Auto Provisioning](#)

Automatic Provisioning (SDP & SSPP)

The SonicWall Discovery Protocol (SDP) is a layer 2 protocol employed by SonicPoints and devices running SonicOS. SDP is the foundation for the automatic provisioning of SonicPoint units via the following messages:

- **Advertisement** – SonicPoint/SonicWaves without a peer periodically and on startup announce or advertise themselves via a broadcast. The advertisement includes information that is used by the receiving SonicWall firewall to ascertain the state of the SonicPoint/SonicWave. The firewall then reports the state of all peered SonicPoint/SonicWaves and takes configuration actions as needed.
- **Discovery** – SonicWall firewalls periodically send discovery request broadcasts to elicit responses from L2 connected SonicPoint/SonicWave units.
- **Configure Directive** – A unicast message from a SonicWall firewall to a specific SonicPoint/SonicWave to establish encryption keys for provisioning and to set the parameters for and to engage configuration mode.
- **Configure Acknowledgement** – A unicast message from a SonicPoint/SonicWave to its peered SonicWall firewall acknowledging a Configure Directive.
- **Keepalive** – A unicast message from a SonicPoint/SonicWave to its peered SonicWall firewall used to validate the state of the SonicPoint/SonicWave.

If through the SDP exchange the SonicWall firewall ascertains that the SonicPoint/SonicWave requires provisioning or a configuration update (such as on calculating a checksum mismatch or when a firmware update is available), the Configure directive engages a 3DES encrypted, reliable TCP-based SonicWall Simple Provisioning Protocol (SSPP) channel. The SonicWall firewall then sends the update to the SonicPoint/SonicWave through this channel, and the SonicPoint/SonicWave restarts with the updated configuration. State information is provided by the SonicPoint/SonicWave and is viewable on the SonicWall firewall throughout the entire discovery and provisioning process.

Enabling Auto Provisioning

SonicPoint Auto Provisioning can be enabled to automatically provision the following wireless SonicPoint/SonicWave provisioning profiles:

- SonicPoint N
- SonicPointNDR
- SonicPoint AC
- SonicWave

Initial configuration of a wireless SonicPoint/SonicWave is provisioned from a SonicPoint/SonicWave profile that is attached to the wireless LAN managing zone. After a SonicPoint/SonicWave is provisioned, the profile remains an offline configuration template that is not directly associated with any SonicPoint/SonicWave. So, modifying a profile does not automatically trigger a SonicPoint/SonicWave for reprovisioning.

Before Auto Provisioning was introduced, administrators had to manually delete all SonicPoints, and then synchronize new SonicPoints to the profile, which was time consuming. To simplify configuration and ease management overhead, SonicPoint Auto Provisioning was introduced.

Checkboxes to enable Auto Provisioning for each of the SonicPoint/SonicWave Provisioning Profiles are provided in the **Network > Zones > Configure > Wireless** configuration dialog. By default, the checkboxes for the SonicPoint/SonicWave Provisioning Profiles are not checked and Auto Provisioning is not enabled.

When the checkbox for a provisioning profile is checked and that profile is changed, all access points linked to that profile are reprovisioned and rebooted to the new operational state.

Remote MAC Access Control for SonicPoint/SonicWaves

IMPORTANT: You cannot enable the Remote MAC address access control option at the same time that the IEEE 802.11i EAP is enabled. If you try to enable the Remote MAC address access control option at the same time that the IEEE 802.11i EAP is enabled, this error message displays:

```
Remote MAC address access control can not be set
when IEEE 802.11i EAP is enabled.
```

NOTE: Remote MAC Access Control is also supported for Virtual Access Points. See [Remote MAC Address Access Control Settings](#).

You can enforce radio wireless access control based on a MAC-based authentication policy in a remote RADIUS server. For the procedure, see [Remote MAC Address Access Control Settings](#).

Access Point Licensing

Licensing for SonicWave access points is different than for SonicPoint access points.

Topics:

- [SonicWave Licensing](#)
- [Licensing Status](#)
- [Manual License Update](#)
- [Automatic License Update](#)

SonicWave Licensing

SonicWall requires additional licensing for each individual SonicWave unit. The license allows you to manage the SonicWave from a SonicWall firewall. Initially, the SonicWave unit is bundled with a 6-month management license.

The SonicWall firewall recognizes the licensing state from SonicWall License Manager (LM) and enables management capability for the underlying SonicWave access point. When the license is within 30 days of expiring, the firewall generates notices to remind the system administrator about license renewal.

If the SonicWave license expires and you do not renew, the SonicWall firewall performs an Out-Of-Service action to deactivate the SonicWave being managed, and the SonicWave access point stops functioning as the access point to bridge traffic. When you pay for the license renewal through MySonicWall, the License Manager extends the SonicWave license, so the firewall can fetch the new license and perform a Back-In-Service action to activate the SonicWave access point.

NOTE: In an isolated environment, where the firewall might not be able to access the License Manager, the administrator can input the SonicWave license keyset into SonicOS on the firewall to modify the SonicWave licensing state. **As long as the SonicWave is holding a valid license, it can be managed by the firewall which takes the position of license proxy to synchronize the SonicWave license with the License Manager.**

Only when a valid license is maintained for the SonicWave access point can the SonicWave behave as a normal access point. Otherwise it is deactivated until new valid license is extended.

Licensing Status

To validate status of SonicWave licensing:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings**.

- 2 Scroll down to the SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects table and check the **Status** of the access point.

SonicPoint / SonicWave Objects

#	Name	Interface	Network Settings	Status	Radio 0
<input type="checkbox"/> 1	SonicWave 432e 7b6ff0 Model: 432e	X2 (WLAN)	IP: [redacted] MAC: [redacted] MGM T: Layer 2	Operational	SSID: sonicwall-4E9C Mode: 5GHz n/a/ac
<input type="checkbox"/> 2	SonicWave 432o 7b8e9e Model: 432o INT	X2 (WLAN)	IP: [redacted] MAC: [redacted] MGM T: Layer 2	Not Licensed	SSID: sonicwall-4E9C Mode: 5GHz n/a/ac

The SonicWave access point can have one of the following statuses:

- **Operational** in green shows the access point is licensed.
- **Not Licensed** in red indicates that the access point is no longer licensed.
- **Expiring** indicates that the license is within 30 days or less of expiring.

Manual License Update

When the firewall cannot reach the License Manager to refresh the SonicWave license, you can still use SonicWall GMS or the SonicOS management interface to configure and update license manually.

- 1 Log into MySonicWall and obtain the manual keyset for the SonicWave license. Copy it to your clipboard.
- 2 On your firewall, navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings**.
- 3 Scroll down to **SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects**.
- 4 Click on the open lock icon in the Configure column for the SonicWave that needs to be manually renewed.

Manual Keyset for SN 18B1697B6FF0

Input Manual Key:

OK

CANCEL

- 5 Type or paste the license key into the key field and click **OK**.

The firewall initiates the process to update the new license key on the SonicWave access point. The SonicWave access point saves the updated license key, brings up radio interface, restores traffic bridging and opens the console access.

Automatic License Update

The firewall automatically queries the SonicWave access point periodically. If the SonicWave access point has been updated the firewall records the new license expiration time in the peer list and updates the new license keyset on the SonicWave access point and control its functionality accordingly.

Before Managing SonicPoint/SonicWaves

Before you can manage SonicPoints in the SonicOS management interface, you must first:

- 1 Configure your access point Provisioning Profiles.
- 2 Configure a Wireless zone.
- 3 Assign profiles to wireless zones. This step is optional. If you do not assign a default profile for a zone, SonicPoint/SonicWaves in that zone will use the first profile in the list.
- 4 Assign an interface to the Wireless zone.
- 5 Attach the access points to the interfaces in the Wireless zone.
- 6 Test the access points.

Updating SonicPoint/SonicWave Firmware

Not all SonicOS firmware contains an image of the SonicPoint/SonicWave firmware. Check the top of the **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings** page and look for the **Download** link.

If your SonicWall appliance has Internet connectivity, it will automatically download the correct version of the SonicPoint/SonicWave image from the firewall server when you connect a SonicPoint/SonicWave.

If your SonicWall appliance does *not* have Internet access, or has access only through a proxy server, you must update the SonicPoint/SonicWave image manually.

To manually update SonicPoint/SonicWave firmware:

- 1 Download the SonicPoint/SonicWave image from <http://www.mysonicwall.com> to a local system with Internet access.

You can download the SonicPoint/SonicWave image from one of the following locations:

- On the same page where you can download the SonicOS firmware
- On the Download Center page, by selecting **SonicPoint/SonicWave** in the **Type** drop-down menu

- 2 Load the SonicPoint/SonicWave image onto a local Web server that is reachable by your SonicWall appliance.

You can change the file name of the SonicPoint/SonicWave image, but you should keep the extension intact (for example, `.bin.sig`).

- 3 In the SonicOS user interface on your SonicWall appliance, navigate to **MANAGE | System Setup | Appliance > Base Settings**.
- 4 In the **System Setup | Appliance > Base Settings** page, under the **Download URL** section, select the appropriate checkbox for the SonicPoint/SonicWave image to download (you can download more than one image):
 - **Manually specify SonicPoint-N image URL (<http://>)**
 - **Manually specify SonicPoint-Ni/Ne image URL (<http://>)**

- **Manually specify SonicPoint-NDR image URL (http://)**
 - **Manually specify SonicPoint-ACe/ACi/N2 image URL (http://)**
 - **Manually specify SonicWave 432o/e/i image URL (http://)**
- 5 In the field(s), type the URL for the SonicPoint/SonicWave image file on your local Web server.
- i** | **NOTE:** When typing the URL for the SonicPoint/SonicWave image file, do NOT include `http://` in the field.
- 6 Click **ACCEPT**.

Resetting the SonicPoint

The SonicPoints and SonicWave 432 e/i have a reset switch inside a small hole in the back of the unit, next to the console port. You can reset the access points at any time by pressing the reset switch with a straightened paperclip, a tooth pick, or other small, straight object.

i | **NOTE:** The SonicWave 432o does not have a reset button.

The reset button resets the configuration of the mode the access point is operating in to the factory defaults. It does not reset the configuration for the other mode. Depending on the mode the access point is operating in, and the amount of time you press the reset button, the access point behaves in one of the following ways:

- Press the reset button for **at least three seconds**, but **less than eight seconds**, with the access point operating in Managed Mode to reset the Managed Mode configuration to factory defaults and reboot the access point.
- Press the reset button for **more than eight seconds** with the access point operating in Managed Mode to reset the Managed Mode configuration to factory defaults and reboot the access point in SafeMode.
- Press the reset button for **at least three seconds**, to reset the configuration to factory defaults and reboot the access point.

Access Points and RADIUS Accounting

i | **NOTE:** For using RADIUS to authenticate users, see [Radius Server Settings](#) on page 166.

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) is a networking protocol that provide centralized authentication, authorization, and accounting. SonicOS uses RADIUS protocols to deliver account information from the NAS (Network Access Server), that is, the access point, to the RADIUS Accounting Server. You can take advantage of the account information to apply various billing rules on the RADIUS Accounting Server side. The accounting information can be based on session duration or traffic load being transferred for each user.

The overall authentication, authorization, and accounting process works as follows:

- 1 A user associates to an access point which is connected to a SonicWall firewall.
- 2 Authentication is performed using the method designated.
- 3 IP subnet/VLAN assignment is enabled.
- 4 The access point sends the RADIUS Account Request start message to an accounting server.
- 5 Re-authentication is performed as necessary.
- 6 Based on the results of the re-authentication, the access point sends the interim account update to the accounting server.

- 7 The user disconnects from the access point.
- 8 The access point sends the RADIUS Account Request stop message to the accounting server.

Setting up the Radius Accounting Server

To set up the Radius Accounting Server:

- 1 Add the RADIUS client entry into the file, `/etc/freeradius/clients.conf`:

```
Client <IP address> {  
    Secret = "<password>"  
}
```

Where `<IP address>` is the IP address of the RADIUS Server and `<password>` is the server password.

i | **NOTE:** The IP address is the WAN IP of the SonicWall GW from which the RADIUS Server is reached.

- 2 Add the user information into the file, `/etc/freeradius/users`:

```
user_name Cleartext-Password := "<password>"
```

Where `user_name` is the user's ID and `<password>` should be replaced with the user's password.

- 3 To start freeradius, run the command,

```
sudo feeradius -X
```

from the command line.

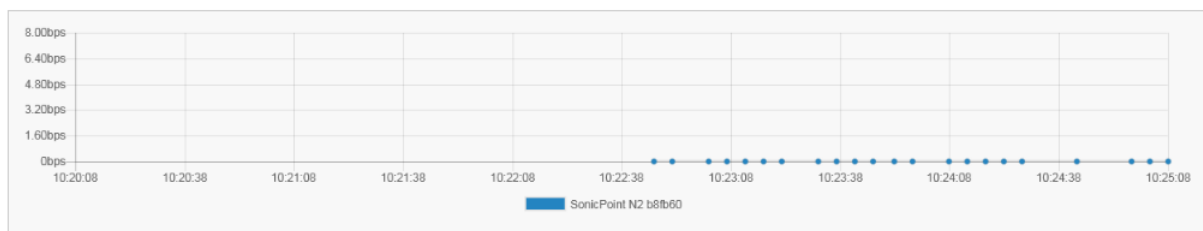
Access Point Dashboard

For SonicWave and SonicPoint AC devices, the **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Dashboard** page provides charts and graphs to visualize the data related to the access points that are a part of your infrastructure. You can display both real-time status and historical status, as well as each client's rate, OS type and hostname. It also displays status of the SonicWave and SonicPoint devices and provides information to help with monitoring and problem diagnosis.

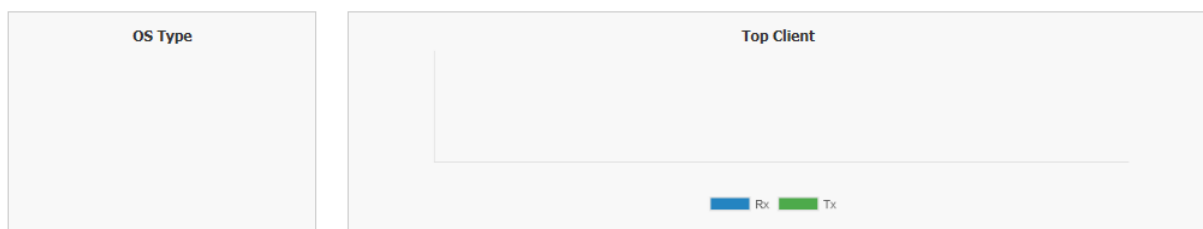
Access Point Snapshot

Refresh Interval(s): 

Real-Time Bandwidth¹

Access Point: 

Client Report¹

TOP: 

Real-Time Client Monitor¹

Clients Connection Details					
Access Point Name	Host Name	MAC Address	OS Type	Rx	Tx

See the following sections for information about the **Dashboard**:

- [Feature Limitations](#)
- [Access Point Snapshot](#)
- [Real-Time Bandwidth](#)
- [Client Report](#)
- [Real-Time Client Monitor](#)

Feature Limitations

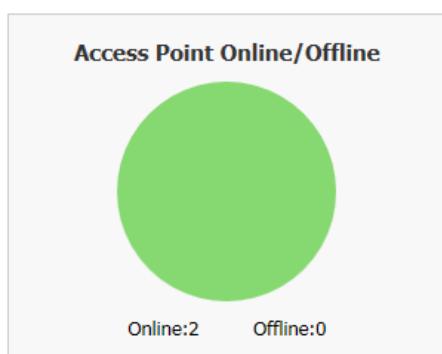
SonicWave and SonicPoint AC device status is displayed when the device is managed by a SonicWall firewall. Both the firewall and the access point need to be functional or no valid data can be exchanged. SonicWave access points retain a seven-day history of the dashboard data at all times. However, due to memory limitations, SonicPoint AC devices lose all history data if they are rebooted.

Access Point Snapshot

Two graphs are shown in the **Access Point Snapshot** section of the **Connectivity | Access Point > Dashboard: Access Point Online/Offline** and **Client Association**. In the right corner, you can specify the refresh interval for these charts. Select the number of minutes from the drop-down menu; the options range from 5 to 10 minutes.

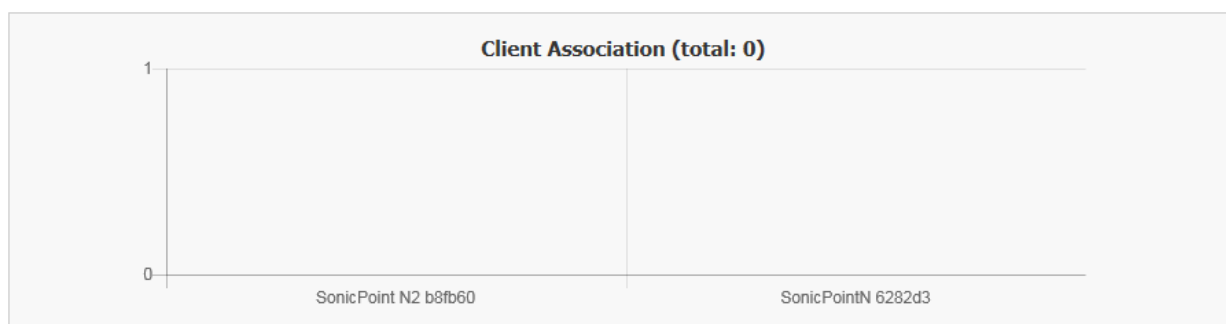
Access Point Online/Offline

The **Access Point Online/Offline** graph shows a quick status of the access points in the infrastructure. The data is presented as a pie chart; online is green and offline is red. At the bottom of the chart, the number of access points and the status is also listed.



Client Association

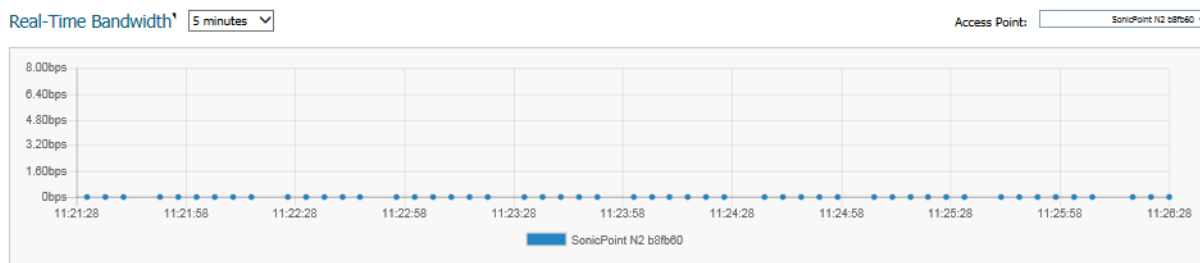
The **Client Association** chart shows the number of clients associated with each access point in the configuration. In the following example, you can see that two access points are in the configuration: a SonicPoint N2 and a SonicPoint N. At the time this snapshot was taken, no clients were accessing the network through these access points. If users were connected, the number of users would be shown in bar chart form.



Real-Time Bandwidth

A graph showing the bandwidth being used of the selected access point is displayed in the **Real-Time Bandwidth** section of the **Connectivity | Access Point > Dashboard**.

NOTE: Only SonicPoint ACe/ACi/N2 and SonicWave devices support the **Real-Time Bandwidth** feature.



To select the refresh interval, select the interval period from the drop-down menu by the chart title. Options are: **1 minute**, **2 minutes**, **5 minutes**, **10 minutes**, and **60 minutes**.

To change the access point being displayed, go to the **Access Point** drop-down menu and select a different device. The chart updates with the data for that access point.

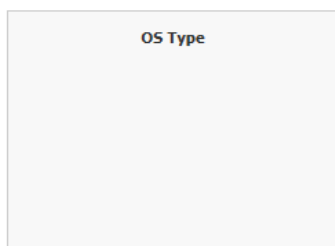
Client Report

Two graphs are shown in the **Client Report** section of the **Connectivity | Access Point > Dashboard: OS Type** and **Top Client**.

NOTE: Only SonicPoint ACe/ACi/N2 and SonicWave devices support the **Real-Time Bandwidth** feature.

OS Type

The operating system types of connected clients are displayed in the **OS Type** section.



Top Client

The **Top Client** chart shows the clients who are using the most bandwidth. By going to the **TOP** field and selecting a number from the drop-down menu, you can show the top 5, top 10, top 15 or top 20 consumers for bandwidth. The values for both transmitting and receiving data are shown for the top users.



Real-Time Client Monitor

A graph showing the client connection details is displayed in the **Real-Time Client Monitor** section of the **Connectivity | Access Point > Dashboard** page. This provides the detail for each user connected through the access points. You can see MAC address, hostname, OS type, volume of traffic being received (Rx) and the volume of traffic being transmitted (Tx).

Real-Time Client Monitor¹

Clients Connection Details					
Access Point Name	Host Name	MAC Address	OS Type	Rx	Tx

Access Point Base Settings

The most effective way to provision wireless access points is let the SonicOS firewall automatically detect the access points and use one of the default profiles. SonicOS includes four default profiles, one for each generation of SonicWall access points: SonicWave, SonicPointACe/ACi/N2, SonicPoint NDR/Ne/Ni and SonicPointN. These can be used as is, or they can be customized to suit your configuration. You can also build new profiles based on the type of SonicWall access point you have. The basic settings for the access point profile is configured at **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings**.

Topics:

- [Provisioning Overview](#)
- [Creating/Modifying Provisioning Profiles](#)
- [Managing Access Points](#)

Provisioning Overview

SonicPoint/SonicWave Provisioning Profiles provide a scalable and highly automated method of configuring and provisioning multiple access points across a Distributed Wireless Architecture. SonicPoint/SonicWave Profile definitions include all of the settings that can be configured on a SonicWall access point, such as radio settings for the 2.4GHz and 5GHz radios, SSID's, and channels of operation.

After you have defined a access point profile, you can apply it to a Wireless zone. Each Wireless zone can be configured with one access point profile. Any profile can apply to any number of zones. Then when an access point is connected to a zone, it is automatically provisioned with the profile assigned to that zone.

When an access point is first connected and powered up, it has a factory default configuration (IP address: 192.168.1.20, username: admin, password: password). Upon initializing, the unit attempts to find a SonicOS device (a SonicWall firewall) with which to peer. When a SonicOS device starts up, it also searches for access points through the SonicWall Discovery Protocol. If the access point and a peer SonicOS device find each other, they communicate through an encrypted exchange where the profile assigned to the relevant Wireless zone is used to automatically provision the newly added access point unit.

As part of the provisioning process, SonicOS assigns the discovered access point a unique name and records its MAC address, the interface, and zone on which it was discovered. If part of the profile, it can also automatically assign an IP address so that the access point can communicate with an authentication server for WPA-EAP support. SonicOS then uses the profile associated with the relevant zone to configure the 2.4GHz and 5GHz radio settings.

Note that changes to profiles do not affect units that have already been provisioned and are in an operational state. Configuration changes to operational access points can occur in two ways:

- Via manual configuration changes to the SonicPoint/SonicWave Object

This option is the best choice when a single, or a small set of changes are to be made, particularly when that individual access point requires settings that are different from the profile assigned to its zone.

- Via un-provisioning by deleting the SonicPoint/SonicWave Object









Deleting an access point effectively un-provisions the unit. It clears its configuration and places it into a state where it automatically engages the provisioning process anew with its peer SonicOS device. This technique is useful when the profile for a zone is updated or changed, and the change is set for propagation. It can be used to update firmware on access points, or to simply and automatically update multiple access points in a *controlled* fashion, rather than changing all peered access points at the same time, causing service disruptions.

Creating/Modifying Provisioning Profiles

On the **MANAGE** view, at **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings**, you can configure and manage the provisioning profiles as well as the individual objects. You can add any number of profiles.

NOTE: *SonicPoint AC* refers to SonicPoint ACe/ACi/N2; *SonicPoint* refers to all SonicPoint devices. *SonicWave* refers to SonicWave 432e/i/o.

Navigate to the **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings** page. The four default SonicOS profiles are listed along with any custom profiles you've developed under the **SonicPoint/SonicWave Provisioning Profiles** section. To modify any of the default provisioning profiles, click on the Edit icon, and make the appropriate changes.

#	Name Prefix	Applied Zone	Radio 0	Radio 0 Channel	Radio 1	Radio 1 Channel	Configure
1	SonicPointACe/ACi/N2	WLAN	SSID: sonicwall-4EC0 Mode: 5GHz n/a/ac	Band: Auto Channel: Auto	SSID: sonicwall-4EC0-1 Mode: 2.4GHz n/g/b	Band: Auto Channel: Auto	 
2	SonicPointN	WLAN	SSID: sonicwall-4EC0 Mode: 2.4GHz n/g/b	Band: Auto Channel: Auto			 
3	SonicPointNDR	WLAN	SSID: sonicwall-4EC0 Mode: 5GHz n/a	Band: Auto Channel: Auto	SSID: sonicwall-4EC0-1 Mode: 2.4GHz n/g/b	Band: Auto Channel: Auto	 
4	SonicWave	WLAN	SSID: sonicwall-4EC0 Mode: 5GHz n/a/ac	Band: Auto Channel: Auto	SSID: sonicwall-4EC0-1 Mode: 2.4GHz n/g/b	Band: Auto Channel: Auto	 

Add New Profile: DELETE DELETE ALL

IMPORTANT: Since creating or modifying the **SonicPoint/SonicWave Provisioning Profiles** are very similar across all access point types, this section reviews how to add a new profile for a SonicWave device. Significant differences in the general process are noted and described in more detail later in this section.

NOTE: The SonicWall-provided provisioning profiles cannot be deleted so the corresponding **Delete** icon is grayed out and not active.

The Add Profile option has several windows where similar settings are grouped. The procedures are grouped to match those windows.

Topics:

- [General Settings for Provisioning Profile](#)
- [Radio 0/1 Basic Settings for Provisioning Profile](#)
- [Radio 0/1 Advanced Settings for Provisioning Profiles](#)
- [Sensor Settings for Provisioning Profiles](#)

- [3G/4G/LTE WWAN Settings for Provisioning Profiles](#)
- [Product Specific Configuration Notes](#)

To access a new provisioning profile:

- 1 On the **MANAGE** view, navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings**.
- 2 In the **Add New Profile** field, under the **SonicPoint/SonicWave Provisioning Profiles** section, select the type of profile you want to build. For this example SonicWave Profile was selected.

NOTE: To modify an existing profile, click on the **Edit** icon for profile you want to update.

The above image only shows the top portion of the **General** screen.

General Settings for Provisioning Profile

To set the options on the General screen:

- 1 Set the options in the **SonicWave Settings** section. The options are described in the following table:

Option	Action
Enable SonicWave	When checked, enables the SonicWave access point. Default is checked.
Retain Settings	When checked, retains the customized until the next time the unit is rebooted. The EDIT button is enabled so you can customize which settings should be retained
	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>Retain Settings</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain All Settings</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain Name and Country Code <input type="checkbox"/> Retain IP Information</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain Enable Access Point <input type="checkbox"/> Retain Enable Retain Settings</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain Enable RF Monitoring</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain WIDP Sensor</p> <p>802.11 Radio 0 Settings</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain Virtual Access Point Settings <input type="checkbox"/> Retain Radio Settings</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain Advanced Radio Settings <input type="checkbox"/> Retain Wireless Security Settings</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain ACL Enforcement</p> <p>802.11 Radio 1 Settings</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain Virtual Access Point Settings <input type="checkbox"/> Retain Radio Settings</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain Advanced Radio Settings <input type="checkbox"/> Retain Wireless Security Settings</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain ACL Enforcement</p> </div>
Enable RF Monitoring	When checked, enables wireless RF-threat, real-time monitoring and management.
Enable LED	When checked, turns on the SonicWave LEDs. If left unchecked, which is the default, the LEDs stay off.
Enable Low Power Mode	When checked, allows the SonicWave to operate in a low power mode due to power source not being standard 802.3at PoE.
Name Prefix	Type the prefix used for the name in the field provided.
Country Code	From the drop-down menu, select the country code for the country in which the access point is deployed.
EAPOL Version	Select EAPoL version from the drop-down menu. Note that V2 provides the better security.
Band Steering Mode	Select the band steering mode from the drop-down menu. Options include: Disable , Auto , Prefer 5GHz , or Force 5GHz .

- 2 Set the **Virtual Access Point Settings**:
 - a For **Radio 0 Virtual AP Group**, select a Virtual Access Point object group from the drop-down menu.
 - b For **Radio 1 Virtual AP Group**, select a Virtual Access Point object group from the drop-down menu.
- 3 Scroll down to see the other **General** settings.

Dynamic VLAN ID Assignment

Enable Dynamic Vlan ID Assignment for Radio 0 EDIT

Enable Dynamic Vlan ID Assignment for Radio 1 EDIT

L3 SSLVPN Tunnel Settings

SSLVPN Server:

User Name:

Password:

Domain:

Auto-Reconnect

To configure L3 SSLVPN, go to [SSL VPN > Client Settings](#).

Administrator Settings

Name:

Password:

- 4 Set the **Dynamic VLAN ID Assignment** settings.

NOTE: To enable the options under Dynamic VLAN ID Assignment, you need create a WLAN zone and VLAN interface under **System Setup | Network**.
- 5 Configure the **L3 SSLVPN Tunnel Settings**:
 - a Type in the **SSLVPN Server** name or IP address in the field provided.
 - b Type the **User Name** for the SSLVPN server in the field provided.
 - c Type the **Password** to authenticate on the SSLVPN server.
 - d Type the **Domain** name in the field provided.
 - e Check the box to enable **Auto-Reconnect**.
 - f If you want to configure Layer 3 SSLVPN, follow the link to **Connectivity | SSL VPN > Client Settings** and define the appropriate settings.
- 6 Set the **Administrator Settings**:
 - a Type in the user **Name** of the network administrator.
 - b Type in the **Password** for the network administrator.

Radio 0/1 Basic Settings for Provisioning Profile

The basic settings for Radio 0 and Radio 1 across the different types of access points are similar and have only a few difference. These differences are noted in the steps.

Radio Settings

To configure Radio 0/Radio 1 Basic Settings:

- 1 Select **Radio 0 Basic** or **Radio 1 Basic**.

Radio 0 Settings

Enable Radio Always on ▾

Mode: 5GHz 802.11ac/n/a Mixed ▾

SSID:

Radio Band: Auto ▾

Channel: Auto ▾

Enable Short Guard Interval ▾ **Enable Aggregation** ▾

- 2 Check **Enable Radio** to enable the radio bands automatically on all access points provisioned with this profile. This option is selected by default.
- 3 From the **Enable Radio** drop-down menu, select a schedule for when the radio is on or create a new schedule. The default is **Always on**.
- 4 Select your preferred radio mode from the **Mode** drop-down menu:

Radio Mode Choices

Radio 0 Basic	Radio 1 Basic	Definition
5GHz 802.11n Only	2.4GHz 802.11n Only	Allows only 802.11n clients access to your wireless network. 802.11a/b/g clients are unable to connect under this restricted radio mode.
5GHz 802.11n/a Mixed	2.4GHz 802.11n/g/b Mixed (SonicPoint AC/NDR default)	Supports 802.11a and 802.11n (Radio 0) or 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n (Radio 1) clients simultaneously. If your wireless network comprises multiple types of clients, select this mode.
5GHz 802.11a Only (SonicPoint NDR default)		Select this mode if only 802.11a clients access your wireless network.
	2.4GHz 802.11g Only	If your wireless network consists only of 802.11g clients, you might select this mode for increased 802.11g performance. You might also select this mode if you wish to prevent 802.11b clients from associating.

Radio Mode Choices

Radio 0 Basic	Radio 1 Basic	Definition
5GHz 802.11ac/n/a Mixed (SonicWave and SonicPoint AC default)		Supports 802.11ac, 802.11a, and 802.11n (Radio 0) clients simultaneously. If your wireless network comprises multiple types of clients, select this mode.
5GHz 802.11ac Only		Allows only 802.11ac clients access to your wireless network. Other clients are unable to connect under this restricted radio mode.

TIP: For 802.11n clients only: If you want optimal throughput, SonicWall recommends the **802.11n Only** radio mode. Use the **802.11n/b/g Mixed** radio mode for multiple wireless client authentication compatibility.

For optimal throughput for 802.11ac clients, SonicWall recommends the **802.11ac Only** radio mode. Use the **802.11ac/n/a Mixed** radio mode for multiple wireless client authentication compatibility.

NOTE: The available **802.11n Radio 0/1 Settings** options change depending on the mode selected. If the wireless radio is configured for a mode that:

- Supports 802.11n, the following options are displayed: **Radio Band, Primary Channel, Secondary Channel, Enable Short Guard Interval, and Enable Aggregation.**
- Does not support 802.11n, only the **Channel** option is displayed.

5 In the **SSID** field, enter a recognizable string for the SSID of each access point using this profile. This is the name that appears in clients' lists of available wireless connections.

TIP: If all SonicPoint/SonicWaves in your organization share the same SSID, it is easier for users to maintain their wireless connection when roaming from one access point to another.

6 Select a radio band from the **Radio Band** drop-down menu:

NOTE: When **Mode = 5GHz 802.11a Only**, the Radio Band options are not available.

- **Auto** - Allows the appliance to automatically detect and set the optimal channel for wireless operation based on signal strength and integrity. If selected for one, both the **Primary Channel** and **Secondary Channel** should be set to **Auto**. This is the default setting.
- **Standard - 20MHz Channel**—Specifies that Radio 0 uses only the standard 20MHz channel.
- **Wide - 40MHz Channel**—Available when any mode except **5GHz 802.11a Only** is selected for the **Radio Band**. It specifies that Radio 0 uses only the wide 40MHz channel.
- **Wide - 80MHz Channel**—Available only when **5GHz 802.11ac/n/a Mixed** or **5GHz 802.11ac only** is selected for the **Radio Band**, specifies that Radio 0 uses only the wide 80MHz channel. (Not available when the **Mode** is **5GHz 802.11n Only, 5GHz 802.11n/a Mixed, or 5GHz 802.11a Only.**)

- 7 Select the channel or channels based on the **Mode** and **Radio Band** options chosen:

Mode	Radio Band	Channel
5GHz 802.11n Only	Auto	The Primary Channel and Secondary Channel fields default to Auto .
	Standard - 20 MHz Channel	Select Auto or one of the radio channels specified in the Standard Channel drop-down menu.
	Wide - 40 MHz Channel	Select Auto or one of the radio channels in the Primary Channel . The Secondary Channel is automatically defined as Auto .
5GHz 802.11n/a Mixed	Auto	The Primary Channel and Secondary Channel fields default to Auto .
	Standard - 20 MHz Channel	Select Auto or one of the radio channels specified in the Standard Channel drop-down menu.
	Wide - 40 MHz Channel	Select Auto or one of the radio channels in the Primary Channel . The Secondary Channel is automatically defined as Auto .
5GHz 802.11a Only	(no option)	Select Auto or one of the radio channels specified in the Channel drop-down menu.
5GHz 802.11ac/n/a Mixed	Auto	The Channel field defaults to Auto .
	Standard - 20 MHz Channel	Select Auto or one of the radio channels specified in the Channel drop-down menu.
	Wide - 40 MHz Channel	Select Auto or one of the radio channels in the Channel field.
	Wide - 80 MHz Channel	Select Auto or one of the radio channels in the Channel field.
5GHz 802.11ac Only	Auto	The Channel field defaults to Auto .
	Standard - 20 MHz Channel	Select Auto or one of the radio channels specified in the Channel drop-down menu.
	Wide - 40 MHz Channel	Select Auto or one of the radio channels in the Channel field.
	Wide - 80 MHz Channel	Select Auto or one of the radio channels in the Channel field.

- 8 Check the box to **Enable Short Guard Interval**. This allows you to increase the radio data rate by shortening the guard interval. Be sure the wireless client can support this to avoid compatibility issues. (Option is not available for **Mode = 5HGz 802.11ac only**.)
- 9 Check the box to **Enable Aggregation**. This allows you to increase the radio throughput by sending multiple data frames in a single transmission. Be sure the wireless client can support this to avoid compatibility issues. (Option is not available for **Mode = 5HGz 802.11ac only**.)
- 10 Continue to **Wireless Security** for more **Radio 0/1 Basic** configuration information.

Wireless Security

NOTE: The SonicOS interface is context-sensitive. If a VAP Group was selected in the **General** screen, the **Wireless Security** section is hidden and you can skip this section.

To set the Wireless Security options:

- 1 Scroll down to the **Wireless Security** section.

Wireless Security

Authentication Type:

WEP Key Mode:

Default Key:

Key Entry:

Key 1:

Key 2:

Key 3:

Key 4:

To configure Wireless Security settings:

- 1 In the **Wireless Security** section, select the **Authentication Type** from the drop-down menu.

NOTE: The options available change with the type of configuration you select.

- 2 Define the remaining settings, using the following table as a reference:

WEP Settings for Wireless Security

Authentication Type	WEP Key Mode	WEP Description	Settings
WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy)		WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is standard for Wi-Fi wireless network security. Open system uses and exchange of information to authenticate and then encrypts the data. Shared keys uses a shared secret key to authenticate.	
WEP - Both (Open System & Shared Key)	WEP Key Mode = None		Remaining settings are grayed out and cannot be selected.
	WEP Key Mode = 64 bit, 128 bit or 152 bit	The number of bits indicates the key strength of the WEP key.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 In Default Key field, select the default key (the key that is tried first). Key 1 is the default. 2 In the Key Entry field, choose whether the key is Alphanumeric or Hexadecimal (0-9, A-F). 3 In the fields for Key 1, Key 2, Key 3, and Key 4 enter encryption keys that will be used when transferring data.

WEP Settings for Wireless Security

Authentication Type	WEP Key Mode	Settings
WEP - Open System		Remaining settings are grayed out and cannot be selected.
WEP - Shared Key	WEP Key Mode = 64 bit, 128 bit or 152 bit The default is 152 bit .	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1 In Default Key field, select the default key (the key that is tried first). Key 1 is the default.2 In the Key Entry field, choose whether the key is Alphanumeric or Hexadecimal (0-9, A-F). The Hexadecimal option is the default.3 In the fields for Key 1, Key 2, Key 3, and Key 4 enter encryption keys that will be used when transferring data.

WPA2 Settings for Wireless Security

Authentication Type	Settings	Description
WPA and WPA2 (Wi-Fi Protected Access) are newer protocols for protecting wireless devices. Selecting one of the WPA2 - AUTO options allows the WPA protocol to be used if a device is not enabled for WPA2.		
WPA2 - PSK	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Select Cipher Type from the drop-down menu. Options are AES (default), TKIP, or Auto.2 Set the Group Key Interval in seconds. The default is 86400.3 Define the Passphrase for the public shared key.	
WPA2 - EAP	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Select Cipher Type from the drop-down menu. Options are AES (default), TKIP, or Auto.2 Set the Group Key Interval in seconds. The default is 86400.	
WPA2 - AUTO - PSK	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Select Cipher Type from the drop-down menu. Options are AES (default), TKIP, or Auto.2 Set the Group Key Interval in seconds. The default is 86400.3 Define the Passphrase for the public shared key.	
WPA2 - AUTO - EAP	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Select Cipher Type from the drop-down menu. Options are AES (default), TKIP, or Auto.2 Set the Group Key Interval in seconds. The default is 86400.	

- 3 Continue to [Radius Server Settings](#) for more **Radio 0/1 Basic** configuration information.

Radius Server Settings

If you selected either **WPA2 - EAP** or **WPA2 - AUTO - EAP** in the **Wireless Security** section, the **Radius Server Settings** section appears. This feature uses a RADIUS server to generate authentication keys. The server has to be configured for this and for communicating with the SonicWall appliance.

To configure RADIUS Server Settings:

- 1 Click the **CONFIGURE** button under **Radius Server Settings**. The **Radius Server Settings** dialog displays. The options displayed on this dialog depend on the type of SonicPoint/SonicWave.

SonicPointNDR or SonicPoint N

Radius Server Global Settings

Radius Server Retries:

Retry Interval (seconds):

Radius Server Settings

Radius Server 1 IP: Port:

Radius Server 1 Secret:

Radius Server 2 IP: Port:

Radius Server 2 Secret:

SonicPointACe/ACi/N2 - SonicWave

Radius Server Global Settings

Radius Server Retries:

Retry Interval (seconds):

Radius Server Settings

Server 1 IP: Port:

Server 1 Secret:

Server 2 IP: Port:

Server 2 Secret:

Radius Accounting Server Settings

Server 1 IP: Port:

Server 1 Secret:

Server 2 IP: Port:

Server 2 Secret:

NAS Identifier to Radius Server

NAS Identifier Type:

NAS IP to Radius Server

NAS IP Addr:

- 2 In the **Radius Server Retries** field, enter the number times, from 1 to 10, the firewall attempts to connect before it fails over to the other Radius server.

- 3 In the **Retry Interval (seconds)** field enter the time, from 0 to 60 seconds, to wait between retries. The default number is **0** or no wait between retries.
- 4 Define the **Radius Server Settings** as described in the following table:

RADIUS Authentication Server Settings

Option	Description
Server 1 IP	The name/location of your RADIUS authentication server
Server 1 Port	The port on which your RADIUS authentication server communicates with clients and network devices. The default port is 1812 .
Server 1 Secret	The secret passcode for your RADIUS authentication server
Server 2	The name/location of your backup RADIUS authentication server
Server 2 Port	The port on which your backup RADIUS authentication server communicates with clients and network devices. The default port is 1812 .
Server 2 Secret	The secret passcode for your backup RADIUS authentication server

- 5 If you are using a Radius server to track usage for charging, set up the **Radius Accounting Server**:

RADIUS Accounting Server Settings

Option	Description
Server 1 IP	The name/location of your RADIUS accounting server
Server 1 Port	The port on which your RADIUS authentication server communicates with clients and network devices.
Server 1 Secret	The secret passcode for your RADIUS authentication server
Server 2	The name/location of your backup RADIUS authentication server
Server 2 Port	The port on which your backup RADIUS authentication server communicates with clients and network devices.
Server 2 Secret	The secret passcode for your backup RADIUS authentication server

- 6 To send the NAS identifier to the RADIUS server, select the type from the **NAS Identifier Type** drop-down menu:
 - **Not Included** (default)
 - **SonicPoint's Name**
 - **SonicPoint's MAC Address**
- 7 To send the NAS IP address to the RADIUS Server, enter the address in the **NAS IP Addr** field.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Continue to [ACL Enforcement](#) for more **Radio 0/1 Basic** configuration information.

ACL Enforcement

Each access point can support an Access Control List (ACL) to provide more effective authentication control. The ACL feature works in tandem with the wireless MAC Filter List currently available on SonicOS. Using the ACL

Enforcement feature, users are able to enable or disable the MAC Filter List, set the Allow List, and set the Deny list.

ACL Enforcement **Enable MAC Filter List**

Allow List:

Deny List:

Enable MIC Failure ACL Blacklist MIC Failure Frequency Threshold (times / minute):

To enable MAC Filter List enforcement:

- 1 Check the box to **Enable MAC Filter List**. When the MAC filter list is enabled, the other settings are also enabled so you can set them.
- 2 In the **Allow List**, select an option from the drop-down list. This identifies which MAC addresses you allow to have access.

Choose **Create MAC Address Object Group** if you want to create a new address object group made up of those you want to have access. Refer to *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 Policies* for information on how to do that.

- 3 In the **Deny List**, select an option from the drop-down list. This identifies which MAC addresses that you deny access to.

Choose **Create MAC Address Object Group** if you want to create a new address object group made up of those who shouldn't have access. Refer to *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 Policies* for information on how to do that.

- 4 Check the box to **Enable MIC Failure ACL Blacklist**.
- 5 Set a **MIC Failure Frequency Threshold** based on number of times per minute. The default is **3**.
- 6 Continue to [Remote MAC Address Access Control Settings](#) for more **Radio 0/1 Basic** configuration information.

Remote MAC Address Access Control Settings

This option allows you to enforce radio wireless access control based on the MAC-based authentication on the RADIUS Server.

Remote MAC Address Access Control Settings

Enable Remote MAC Access Control

To allow wireless access control:

- 1 Check the box to **Enable Remote MAC Access Control**.
- 2 Click **CONFIGURE**.
- 3 If not already configured, set up the RADIUS Server(s) as described in [Radius Server Settings](#).
- 4 This concludes the **Radio 0/1 Basic** configuration. Click **OK** or continue to [Radio 0/1 Advanced Settings for Provisioning Profiles](#) for **Radio 0/1 Advanced** configuration information.

Radio 0/1 Advanced Settings for Provisioning Profiles

These settings affect the operation of the radio bands (Radio 0: 5GHz and Radio 1: 2.4GHz). The SonicPoint/SonicWave has two separate radios built in. Therefore, it can send and receive on both bands at the same time.

The **Radio 1 Advanced** screen has the same options as the **Radio 0 Advanced** screen plus other options.

Radio 0 Advanced (SonicWave profile)

Radio 0 Advanced Settings

- Hide SSID in Beacon
- Schedule IDS Scan:
- Data Rate:
- Transmit Power:
- Beacon Interval (milliseconds):
- DTIM Interval:
- RTS Threshold (bytes):
- Maximum Client Associations:
- Station Inactivity Timeout (seconds):
- WMM (Wi-Fi Multimedia):
- Enable WDS AP
- Enable Green AP
 - Green AP Timeout(s):
- Enable Air Time Fairness

Radio 1 Advanced (SonicWave profile)

Radio 1 Advanced Settings

Hide SSID in Beacon

Schedule IDS Scan:

Data Rate:

Transmit Power:

Beacon Interval (milliseconds):

DTIM Interval:

RTS Threshold (bytes):

Maximum Client Associations:

Station Inactivity Timeout (seconds):

Preamble Length:

Protection Mode:

Protection Rate:

Protection Type:

Enable Short Slot Time Do not allow 802.11b Clients to Connect

WMM (Wi-Fi Multimedia):

Enable WDS AP

Enable Green AP

 Green AP Timeout(s):

Enable Air Time Fairness

The screens are similar across the different access point models, so follow this procedure for all. Differences are noted in the procedure where needed.

To configure the Radio 0/Radio 1 Advanced settings:

- 1 Click **Radio 0 Advanced** or **Radio 1 Advanced** as needed.
- 2 Check the box if you want to **Hide SSID in Beacon**. This allows the SSID to send null SSID beacons in place of advertising the wireless SSID name. Sending null SSID beacons forces wireless clients to know the SSID to connect. This option is unchecked by default.
- 3 From the **Schedule IDS Scan** drop-down menu, select a schedule for the IDS (Intrusion Detection Service) scan.

Select a time when there are fewer demands on the wireless network to minimize the inconvenience of dropped wireless connections. You can create your own schedule by selecting **Create new schedule** or disable the feature by selecting **Disabled**, the default.

i **NOTE:** IDS offers a wide selection of intrusion detection features to protect the network against wireless threats. This feature detects attacks against the WLAN Infrastructure that consists of authorized access points, the RF medium, and the wired network. An authorized or valid-AP is defined as an access point that belongs to the WLAN infrastructure. The access point is either a SonicPoint, a SonicWave, or a third-party access point.

- 4 From the **Data Rate** drop-down menu, select the speed at which the data is transmitted and received. **Best** (default) automatically selects the best rate available in your area, given interference and other factors.

5 From the **Transmit Power** drop-down menu, select the transmission power. Transmission power affects the range of the SonicPoint.

- **Full Power** (default)
- **Half (-3 dB)**
- **Quarter (-6 dB)**
- **Eighth (-9 dB)**
- **Minimum**

6 If you are configuring a SonicPoint NDR: from the **Antenna Diversity** drop-down menu, select **Best** (default).

The **Antenna Diversity** setting determines which antenna the access point uses to send and receive data. When **Best** is selected, the access point automatically selects the antenna with the strongest, clearest signal.

7 In the **Beacon Interval (milliseconds)** field, enter the number of milliseconds between sending wireless SSID beacons. The minimum interval is 100 milliseconds (default); the maximum is 1000 milliseconds.

8 In the **DTIM Interval** field, enter the DTIM interval in milliseconds. The minimum number of frames is 1 (default); the maximum is 255.

For 802.11 power-save mode clients of incoming multicast packets, the **DTIM interval** specifies the number of beacon frames to wait before sending a DTIM (Delivery Traffic Indication Message).

9 If you are configuring a SonicPointNDR: in the **Fragmentation Threshold (bytes)** field, enter the number of bytes of fragmented data you want the network to allow.

The fragmentation threshold limits the maximum frame size. Limiting frame size reduces the time required to transmit the frame and, therefore, reduces the probability that the frame will be corrupted (at the cost of more data overhead). Fragmented wireless frames increase reliability and throughput in areas with RF interference or poor wireless coverage. Lower threshold numbers produce more fragments. The minimum is 256 bytes, the maximum is 2346 bytes (default).

10 In the **RTS Threshold (bytes)** field, enter the threshold for a packet size, in bytes, at which a request to send (RTS) is sent before packet transmission.

Sending an RTS ensures that wireless collisions do not take place in situations where clients are in range of the same access point, but might not be in range of each other. The minimum threshold is 256 bytes, the maximum is 2346 bytes (default).

11 In the **Maximum Client Associations** field, enter the maximum number of clients you want each access point using this profile to support on this radio at one time. The minimum number of clients is 1, the maximum number is 128, and the default number is **32**.

12 In the **Station Inactivity Timeout (seconds)** field, enter the maximum length of wireless client inactivity before the access point ages out the wireless client. The minimum period is 60 seconds, the maximum is 36000 seconds, and the default is **300** seconds.

- 13 If you are configuring the **Radio 1 Advanced** screen settings, define the following settings which are specific to that window; otherwise skip to the next step.

Options	Settings
Preamble Length	Select from the drop-down menu: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Long (default) • Short
Protection Mode	Select from the drop-down menu: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None (default) • Always • Auto
Protection Rate	Select from the drop-down menu: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 Mbps (default) • 2 Mbps • 5 Mbps • 11 Mbps
Protection Type	Select from the drop-down menu: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CTS Only (default) • RTS-CTS
Enable Short Slot Time	Select to allow clients to disassociate and reassociate more quickly. Specifying this option increases throughput on the 802.11n/g wireless band by shortening the time an access point waits before relaying packets to the LAN.
Do not allow 802.11b Clients to Connect	Select if you are using Turbo G mode and, therefore, are not allowing 802.11b clients to connect. Specifying this option limits wireless connections to 802.11g and 802.11n clients only.

- 14 From the **WMM (Wi-Fi Multimedia)** drop-down menu, select whether a WMM profile is to be associated with this profile:

- **Disabled** (default)
- **Create new WMM profile.** Refer to [Configuring Wi-Fi MultiMedia](#) for more details.
- A previously configured WMM profile

- 15 Check the box to **Enable WDS AP**. It allows a wireless network to be expanded using multiple access point without the traditional requirement for a wired backbone to link them.

- 16 Select **Enable Green AP** to allow the access point radio to go into sleep mode. This saves power when no clients are actively connected. The access point immediately goes into full power mode when any client attempts to connect to it. Green AP can be set on each radio independently, Radio 0 (5GHz) and Radio 1 (2.4GHz).

- 17 In the **Green AP Timeout(s)** field, enter the transition time, in seconds, that the access point waits while it has no active connections before it goes into sleep mode. The transition values can range from 20 seconds to 65535 seconds with a default value of **20** seconds.

- 18 If configuring a SonicWave device, check the box to **Enable Air Time Fairness**.

This feature is disabled by default. If enabled, it steers the traffic for devices that can use the 5GHz band to that band since it usually has less traffic and less interference. If the signal strength or signal conditions are better on the 2.4 GHz band, traffic is be steered to that band. The intention is to use both bands in the most effective manner.

- 19 This concludes the **Radio 0/1 Advanced** configuration. Click **OK** or continue to [Sensor Settings for Provisioning Profiles](#) for **Sensor** configuration information.

Sensor Settings for Provisioning Profiles

SonicWave WIDP sensor

SonicWave will run as dedicated Wireless Intrusion Detection and Prevent sensor when WIDP sensor mode is enabled. Access point or virtual access point(s) will be automatically disabled.

Enable WIDP sensor Always on

In the **Sensor** screen, you can enable or disable Wireless Intrusion Detection and Prevention (WIDP) mode

IMPORTANT: If this option is selected, access point or Virtual Access Point functionality is disabled automatically.

To configure the Sensor settings:

- 1 Click **Sensor** to display the Sensor screen.
- 2 Select **Enable WIDP sensor** to have the access point operate as a dedicated Wireless Intrusion Detection and Prevention sensor. This option is not selected by default.
- 3 From the drop-down menu, select the schedule for when the access point operates as a WIDP sensor or select **Create new schedule...** to specify a different time. The default is **Always on**.
- 4 This concludes the **Sensor** configuration. Click **OK** or continue to [3G/4G/LTE WWAN Settings for Provisioning Profiles](#) for **3G/4G/LTE WWAN Connection Settings** configuration information.

3G/4G/LTE WWAN Settings for Provisioning Profiles

NOTE: If you are not configuring a 3G/4G/LTE USB modem, you can skip this section.

This features provides another wireless WAN solution for firewall appliances that use wireless access points like SonicWave devices. You can plug a USB modem device into the SonicWave and it does the dial-up operation and connects to the internet. Once connected, the SonicWave acts as a WWAN device for the firewall and provides WAN access.

3G/4G/LTE WWAN screen

3G/4G/LTE WWAN Connection Settings

Enable 3G/4G/LTE Modem

Bound to WAN VLAN Interface:

Connection Profile

Enable Connection Profile

Country:

Service Provider:

Plan Type:

Connection Type:

Dialed Number:

User Name:

User Password:

APN:

3G/4G/LTE WWAN Wizard

When configuring the modem for the first time, you can use the wizard to take advantage of the auto-discovery features for this option.

Topics:

- [Using the 3G/4G/LTE WWAN Wizard](#)
- [Manually Configuring the 3G/4G/LTE WWAN Profile](#)

Using the 3G/4G/LTE WWAN Wizard

To configure the USB modem using the wizard:

- 1 Click **3G/4G/LTE WWAN**.
- 2 Scroll to the bottom and click the **3G/4G/LTE WIZARD** button.

The Introduction screen of the SonicWall Access Point 3G/4G/LTE WWAN Guide displays.



Introduction

Welcome to the 3G/4G/LTE Wireless-WAN Wizard (for)

This wizard will help you quickly configure your initial 3G/4G/LTE settings. You will be able to follow these steps:

1. Bind to an existing VLAN interface or create a new one.
2. Choose the dialup profiles for your 3G/4G/LTE connection.

Please see the User's Guide for more details.

To continue, click Next.

- 3 Click **NEXT**.



Bind VLAN Interface

Please choose a VLAN Interface for the new 3G/4G/LTE subnet:

VLAN Interface:

OR, you can create a new VLAN Interface:

Create a new VLAN Interface:

Zone:

VLAN Tag (1-4094):

Parent Interface:

IP Assignment:

IP address:

Subnet Mask:

Default Gateway:

To continue, click Next.

- 4 Choose a **VLAN Interface** from the drop-down menu, or check the box to **Create a New VLAN Interface**.

If you opt to create a new VLAN interface, the remaining fields become active. Provide the data requested.

i **NOTE:** If you set **IP Assignment** to **DHCP**, the IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Default Gateway fields are hidden.

- 5 Click **NEXT**.



Profiles Settings

3G/4G/LTE Connection Profile Settings

Some traditional 3G/4G modems need connection profiles for dial-up.

Enable Connection Profile

Country:

Service Provider:

Plan Type:

Connection Type:

Dialed Number:

User Name:

User Password:

To continue, click Next.

- 6 In the **Country** field, select the country where the access point is deployed.
- 7 Select the **Service Provider** for the drop-down menu.
- 8 Select the **Plan Type** from the drop-down menu. Depending on the selection, other fields are auto-populated.
- 9 If needed, add the **User Name** and **User Password** to the appropriate fields.
- 10 Click **NEXT**.



SonicWall Configuration Summary

Bind Vlan Interface

Create a new interface
Zone: WAN
Vlan Tag: 2
Parent Interface: X0
IP Assignment: DHCP

Dialup Profile Settings

Profile Status: Enabled
Connection Profile:
ISP Country: USA
ISP Provider: Verizon
ISP Plan: 4G/LTE
Connection Type: GPRS/HSPA/LTE
Dialed Number: *99***3#
User Name: mcsd1@sonicwall.com
User Password: ****
ISP Apn: internet

To apply these settings, click NEXT.

- 11 Click **NEXT** again to apply the settings.

Manually Configuring the 3G/4G/LTE WWAN Profile

You can manually configure the 3G/4G/LTE WWAN profile or manually make changes by using the following procedure.

To manually configure the modem as a WWAN:

- 1 Click **3G/4GLTE WWAN**.

3G/4G/LTE WWAN Connection Settings

Enable 3G/4G/LTE Modem

Bound to WAN VLAN Interface: -- Select VLAN Interface --

Connection Profile

Enable Connection Profile

Country: Please Select

Service Provider: Please Select

Plan Type: Please Select

Connection Type: Please Select

Dialed Number:

User Name:

User Password:

APN:

3G/4G/LTE WWAN Wizard

3G/4G/LTE WIZARD

- 2 Select the **Enable 3G/4G/LTE Modem** checkbox.
- 3 Select a VLAN interface from the **Bound to WAN VLAN Interface** drop-down menu.

If no interfaces are listed in the drop-down menu, you need to define one. Refer to the Network > Interfaces section in *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup*.

NOTE: When building a VLAN interface, set the zone to WAN zone and the parent interface to the physical interface the access point is connected to.

For 3G USB modems, set the IP Assignment to Static and assign a private IP address to it. Leave the gateway and DNS server fields blank.

For 4G and QMI modems, set the IP Assignment to DHCP.

- 4 In the **Connection Profile** section, check the box to **Enable Connection Profile**.

NOTE: Some traditional 3G/4G modems need connection profiles for dial-up.

- 5 In the **Country** field, select the country where the access point is deployed.
- 6 Select the **Service Provider** from the drop-down menu.

- 7 Select the **Plan Type** from the drop-down menu. Depending on the selection, other fields are auto-populated.
- 8 If needed, add the **User Name**, **User Password** and **APN** to the appropriate fields.
- 9 When done, click **OK**.

Product Specific Configuration Notes

SonicPoint configuration process varies slightly depending on whether you are configuring a single-radio (SonicPointN) or a dual radio device.

Managing Access Points

Topics:

- [Synchronize Access Points](#)
- [Delete Access Point Profiles](#)
- [Delete SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects](#)
- [Reboot SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects](#)
- [Modify SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects](#)

Synchronize Access Points

Click **SYNCHRONIZE ACCESS POINTS** at the top of the **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings** page to issue a query from the SonicWall appliance to the WLAN Zone. All connected access points report their current settings and statistics to the appliance. SonicOS also attempts to locate the presence of any newly connected access points that are not yet registered with the firewall.

 **NOTE:** The button polls the access points, but does not push configuration to them.

Delete Access Point Profiles

 **NOTE:** You cannot delete the predefined profiles; you can only delete those you add.

You can delete individual profiles or groups of profiles from the **SonicPoint/SonicWave Provisioning Profiles** section on the **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings** page:

- Delete a single access point profile by:
 - a Clicking its **Delete** button. A confirmation message appears.
 - b Click **OK**.
- Delete one or more access point profiles by:
 - a Selecting the checkbox next to the name(s) of the access points to be deleted. The **DELETE** button becomes active.
 - b Click the **DELETE** button. A confirmation message appears.

- c Click **OK**.
- Delete all profiles by:
 - a Select the checkbox next to the # in the column heading. The **Delete All** button becomes active.
 - b Click the **DELETE ALL** button. A confirmation message appears
 - c Click **OK**.

Delete SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects

You can delete individual access points or groups of access points from the **SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects** section on the **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings** page:

- Delete a single object by:
 - a Clicking its **Delete** button for that object. A confirmation message appears.
 - b Click **OK**.
- Delete one or more objects by:
 - a Selecting the checkbox next to the objects to be deleted. The **DELETE** button becomes active.
 - b Click the **DELETE** button. A confirmation message appears.
 - c Click **OK**.
- Delete all objects by:
 - a Select the checkbox next to the # in the column heading. The **DELETE ALL** button becomes active.
 - b Click the **DELETE ALL** button. A confirmation message appears.
 - c Click **OK**.

Reboot SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects


You can reboot individual access points or groups of access points from the **SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects** section on the **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings** page:

- Reboot a single object by:
 - a Check the checkbox next to the name of the access point to be rebooted. The **REBOOT** icon becomes active.
 - b Click the **REBOOT** button. A confirmation message displays.
 - c Select the type of reboot:
 - **reboot** (default) – Reboots to the configured profile settings.
 - **reboot to factory default** – Reboots to factory default settings.

 **CAUTION:** Selecting this option overwrites the access point provisioning with factory default values.

- d Click **OK**.
- Reboot all objects by:
 - a Click the **REBOOT ALL** button.

- b Select one of the following:
- **reboot** (default) – Reboots to the configured profile settings.
 - **reboot to factory default**


 **CAUTION:** Selecting this option overwrites the access point provisioning with factory default values.

- c Click **OK** to reboot the access points or **Cancel** to close the window without rebooting.

Modify SonicPoint/SonicWave Objects

An access point object can be modified from the **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings**.

- 1 Click the **Edit** icon for the object you want to modify.
- 2 Change the settings you want to modify.
- 3 Click **OK** to save the new settings.

 **NOTE:** New SonicPoint/SonicWave access points are added automatically when the network appliance performs an auto-discovery process.

Access Point Floor Plan

On the **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Floor Plan View** page, the SonicOS user interface allows a more visual approach to managing large numbers of SonicWave and SonicPoint devices. You can also track physical location and real-time status.

The Floor Plan View feature provides a real-time picture of the actual wireless radio environment and improves your ability to estimate the wireless coverage of new deployments. The floor plan view also provides a single point console to check access point statistics, monitor access point real-time status, configure access points, remove access points and even show the access point RF coverage from the consolidated the context menu.

The figure below shows a sample of a typical floor plan view.



Topics:

- [Managing the Floor Plans](#)
- [Managing Access Points](#)

Managing the Floor Plans

The Floor Plan View feature has a number of ways to view, add, and edit floor plans. The most common are described in this section.

Topics:

- [Selecting a Floor Plan](#)
- [Create a Floor Plan](#)

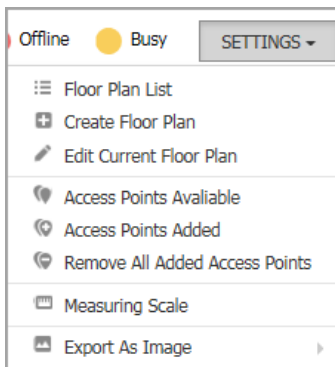
- [Edit a Floor Plan](#)
- [Set Measuring Scale](#)

Selecting a Floor Plan

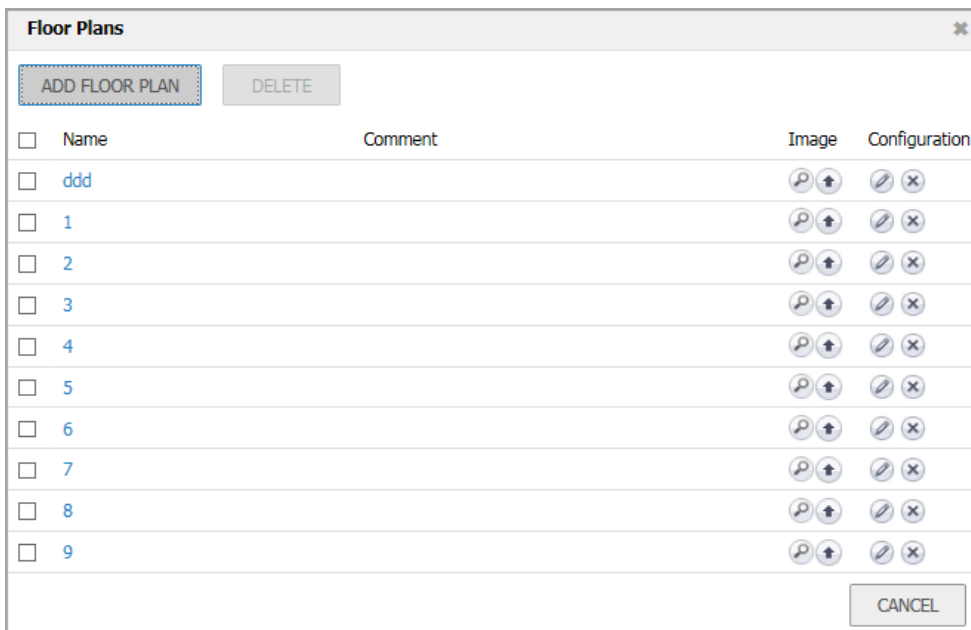
On the **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Floor Plan View** page, the title of the floor plan being displayed is shown in the **Choose Floor Plan** field in the upper left corner. To see a different floor plan, select a different floor plan from the **Choose Floor Plan** drop-down menu.

Another way to choose a floor plan:

- 1 Click on **SETTINGS**.



- 2 Select **Floor Plan List**.

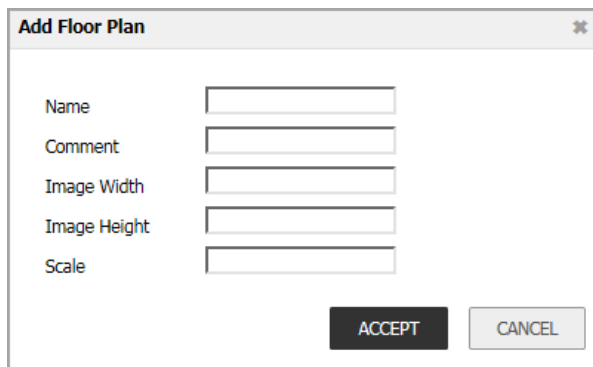


- 3 Double-click on the name of the plan you want to display.

Create a Floor Plan

To create a floor plan:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Floor Plan View**.
- 2 Click on **SETTINGS**.
- 3 Select **Create Floor Plan**.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add Floor Plan" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains five input fields: "Name", "Comment", "Image Width", "Image Height", and "Scale". At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "ACCEPT" (dark grey) and "CANCEL" (light grey).

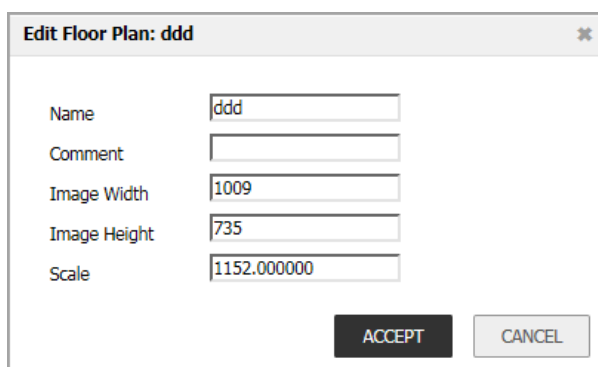
- 4 Fill in the fields describing the plan.
- 5 Click **ACCEPT**.

Edit a Floor Plan

There are different ways to edit floor plans; these are the most common.

To edit the floor plan being displayed:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Floor Plan View**.
- 2 Click on **SETTINGS**.
- 3 Select **Edit Current Floor Plan**.



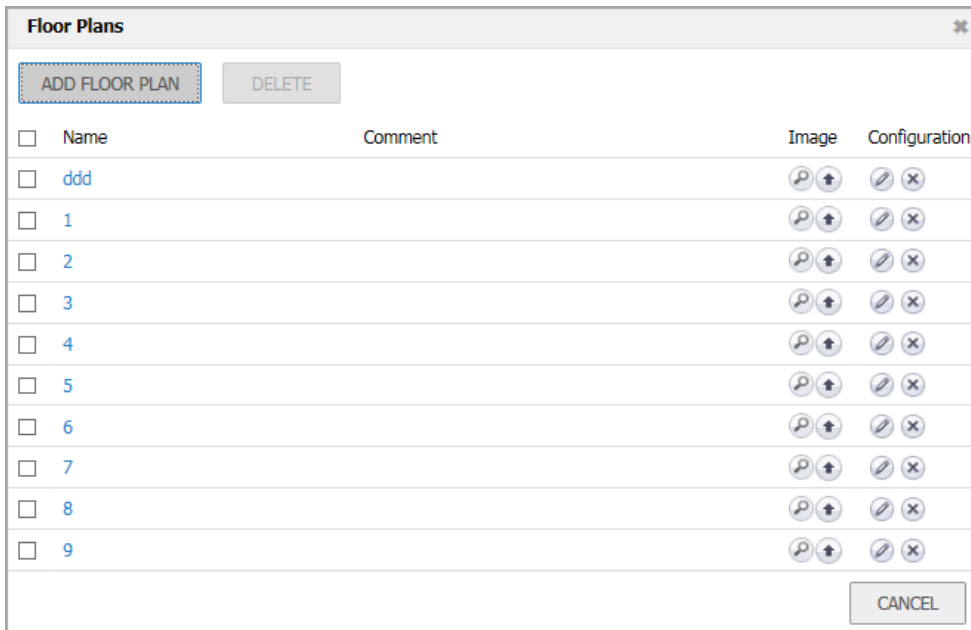
The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Floor Plan: ddd" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains five input fields: "Name" (with "ddd" entered), "Comment", "Image Width" (with "1009" entered), "Image Height" (with "735" entered), and "Scale" (with "1152.000000" entered). At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "ACCEPT" (dark grey) and "CANCEL" (light grey).

- 4 Change the fields as needed.
- 5 Click **ACCEPT**.

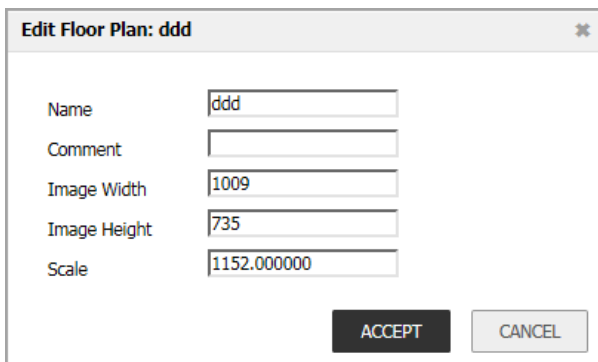
To edit a plan in the list:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Floor Plan View**.

- 2 Click on **SETTINGS**.
- 3 Select **Floor Plan List**.



- 4 Click the **Edit** icon.



- 5 Change the fields as needed.
- 6 Click **ACCEPT**.

Set Measuring Scale

You need to set a measuring scale to show the relationship of real distance (feet) and the pixels that make up the picture of the floor plan. You can use this value to help estimate the RF coverage.

To set the measuring scale:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Floor Plan View**.
- 2 Click on **SETTINGS**.

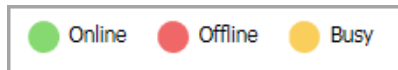
- 3 Select **Measuring Scale**. The Line Length field appears on the window.



- 4 Enter number of pixels per foot.
- 5 Click **Exit Drawing**.

Managing Access Points

Access Point status is displayed with color



The individual access points can be managed on the **Floor Plan View**.

Topics:

- [Available Access Points](#)
- [Added Access Points](#)
- [Remove Access Points](#)
- [Export Image](#)

Available Access Points

The access points that are available for deployment are shown in the **Available Access Points** list. The list typically appears in the upper right corner, but you can drag-and-drop it anywhere. You can close it by clicking on the **X** in the corner. To show the list, click **SETTINGS > Access Points Available**.

You can drag-and-drop these access points to the floor plan and place them where you want them. Be sure to click **SAVE PLAN** when done.

 **NOTE:** Access points that are already added to a floor plan do not show in this panel.

Added Access Points

The access points that have been deployed are shown in the **Added Access Points** list. The list typically appears in the upper left corner, but you can drag-and-drop it anywhere. You can close it by clicking on the **X** in the corner. To show the list, click **SETTINGS > Access Points Added**.

You can drag-and-drop these access points to different places on the floor plan, or you can delete them from the plan. Be sure to click **SAVE PLAN** when done.

Remove Access Points

To remove all access points:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Floor Plan View**.
- 2 Click on **SETTINGS**.
- 3 Select **Remove All Added Access Points**.
- 4 Click **SAVE PLAN**.

Export Image

To export the floor plan images:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Floor Plan View**.
- 2 Click on **SETTINGS**.
- 3 Select **Export as Image**.
- 4 Choose whether you want it saved in **JPG** or **PNG** format.
- 5 Save the file where you can access it later.

Context Menu

You can use your mouse to activate various context menus:

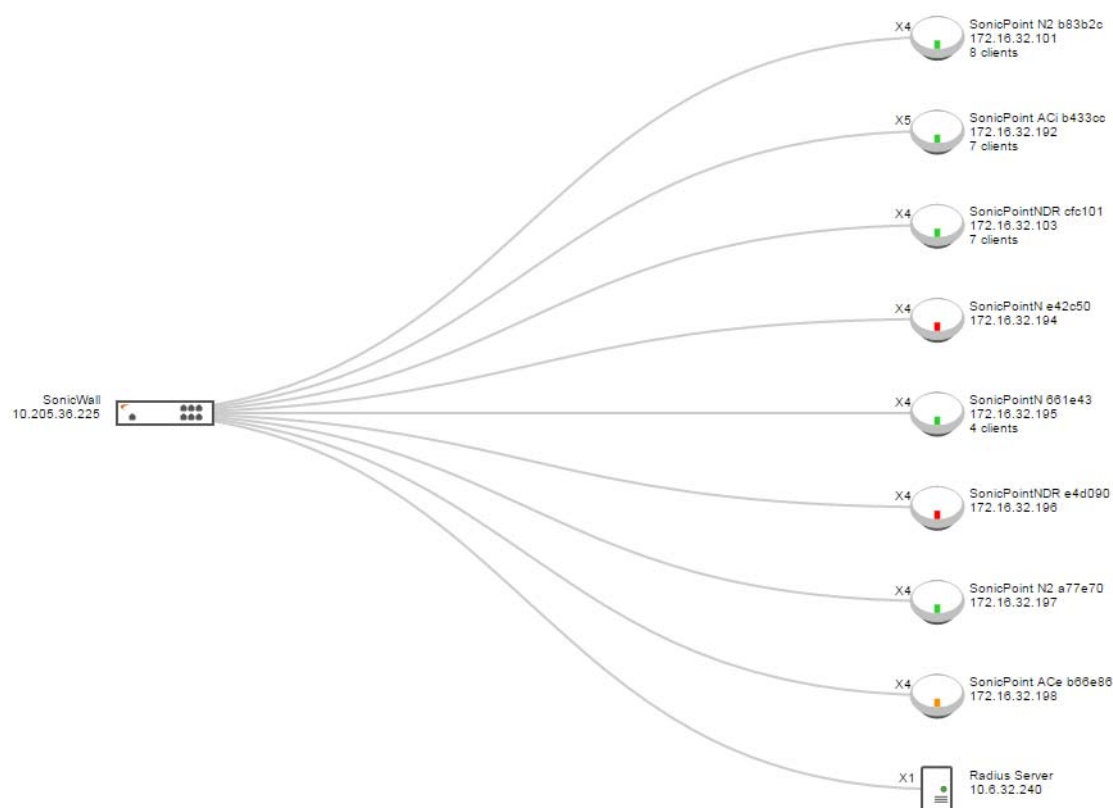
- When you mouse over an active access point on the floor plan, a pop-up displays access point information, including ID, status, number of clients, and up time.
- By clicking on the access point, the RF coverage is displayed.
- By double-clicking the access point, the Real-Time Monitoring window appears.
- By right-clicking the access point, a context menu appears. It has options to edit, show statistics, monitor status and so forth.

Access Point Topology View

On the **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Topology View** page, access points can be managed by the Topology View feature. The Topology View shows the network topology from the SonicWall firewall to the wireless access point. The access point real-time status can be monitored, and the context menu also provides configuration options.

This feature shows the logical relationship among all WLAN zone devices, and provides a way to manage devices directly in the Topology View.

The **Connectivity | Access Points > Topology View** page displays a tree-like diagram showing connected devices known to the firewall and their relationships, similar to the figure below:



Topics:

- [Managing the Topology View](#)
- [Managing Access Points in the Topology View](#)

Managing the Topology View

The Topology View is a simple interface. It provides the means to keep the view current and to modify the access points in the infrastructure.

Whenever you want to validate that the topology is current, click the **REDISCOVER** button on the bottom right corner. This forces the appliance to check if any changes have been made to the wireless infrastructure.


You can also get detailed information on each of the devices in the Topology View. Just run your mouse pointer over the device and a tooltip bubble pops up. Depending on the type of device, it shows information like Name, IP address, Interface, and Model. For the access points, you can also see additional information like status and number of clients.

Each access point also uses color to indicate status:

- Green = online
- Red = offline
- Yellow = busy

Managing Access Points in the Topology View

The Topology View has a context menu with commands that can be used to manage the access points.

 **NOTE:** Only access points have context menus. None of the other devices in the topology map do.

Topics:

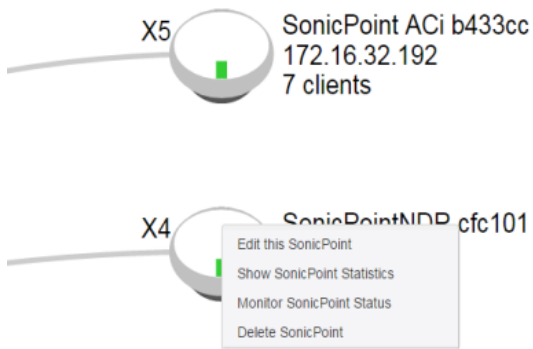
- [Editing an Access Point](#)
- [Showing Statistics](#)
- [Monitor Status on an Access Point](#)
- [Delete an Access Point](#)

Editing an Access Point

To edit an access point in the Topology View:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Topology View**.
- 2 Roll your mouse over the access point you want to edit.

- 3 Right-click on the access point.



- 4 Select **Edit this Access Point**.
- 5 Make changes to the object configuration as needed.
- 6 Click **OK** to save new settings.

Showing Statistics

To show statistics for an access point:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Topology View**.
- 2 Roll your mouse over the access point you want to show.
- 3 Right-click on the access point.

- 4 Select **Show Access Point Statistics**.

Access Point Statistics

SonicPoint/SonicWave Information		Radio Statistics		
Name:	SonicPoint N2 b8fb60	<u>Description</u>	<u>Radio 0</u>	<u>Radio 1</u>
Mac Address:	c0:ea:e4:b8:fb:60	BSSID:	c0:ea:e4:b8:fb:62	c0:ea:e4:b8:fb:6a
IP Address:	192.168.4.248	SSID / MSSID:	sonicwall-4438	sonicwall-4438-1
Interface:	X4	Channel:	802.11n 5GHz Mixed - AutoBand Auto (44 48)	802.11n 2.4GHz Mixed - AutoBand Auto (13)
Zone:	WLAN	Connected Stations:	0	0
Status:	Operational	Associations:	0	131
Uptime:	7 Days, 13 Hours, 29 Minutes, 3 Seconds	Disassociations:	0	11
Steered:	Disabled	Reassociations:	0	131
Associated:	N/A	Authentications:	0	138
		Deauthentications:	0	6
		Discards Packets:	0	0

Traffic Statistics				
<u>Description</u>	<u>Radio 0</u>		<u>Radio 1</u>	
	<u>Rx</u>	<u>Tx</u>	<u>Rx</u>	<u>Tx</u>
Good Packets:	13056244	193462	23670424	494889
Bad Packets:	0	417489	1	167111
Good Bytes:	3346839767	36562698	820204657	153120573
Management Packets:	12983602	6591939	22931194	6766454
Control Packets:	41649	0	14896	0
Data Packets:	13056244	245281	23670424	583030

REFRESH

OK

- 5 Click **REFRESH** if you want to refresh the statistics.
- 6 Click **OK** when done.

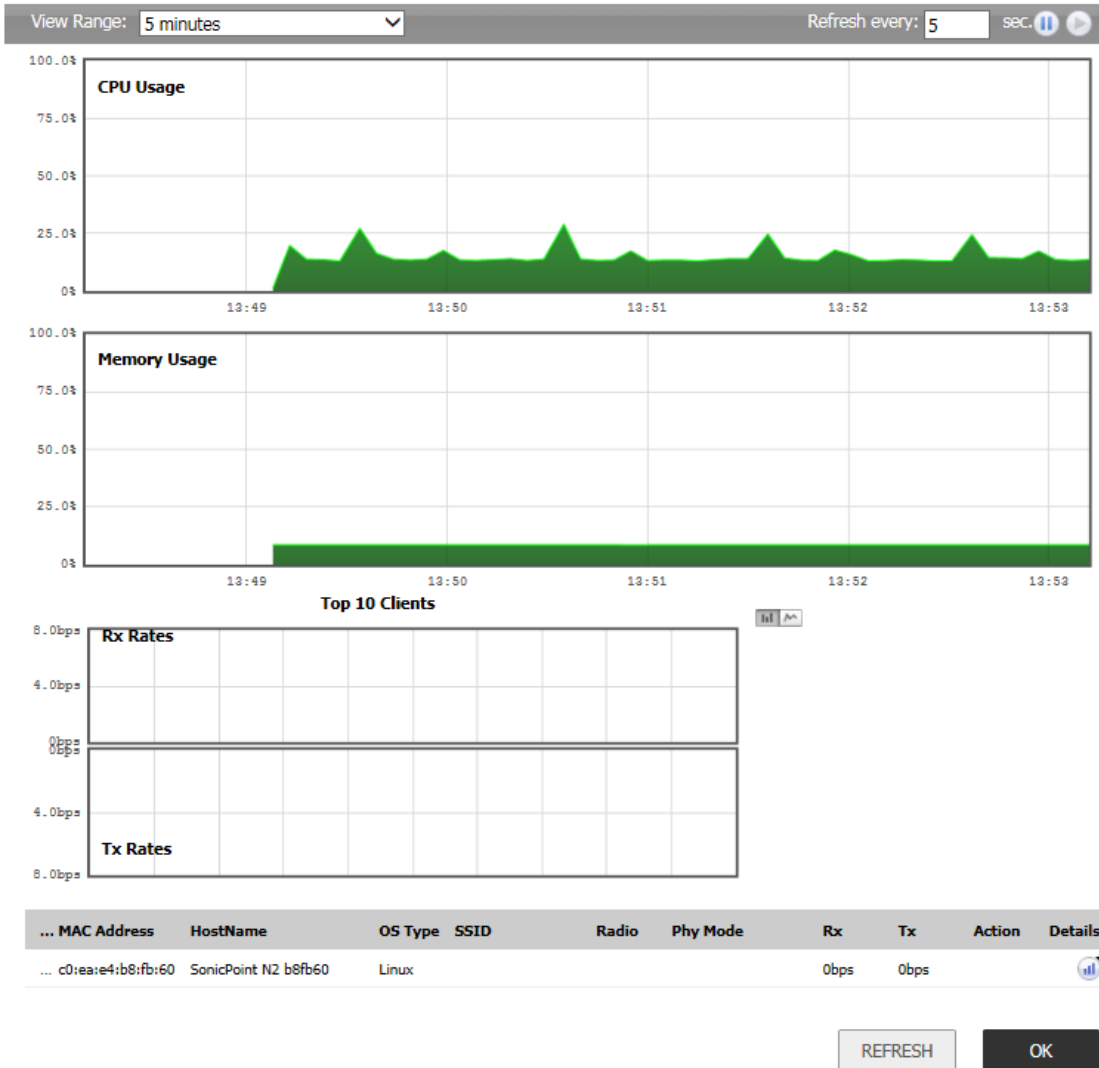
Monitor Status on an Access Point

To monitor an access point in the Topology View:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Topology View**.
- 2 Roll your mouse over the access point you want to monitor.
- 3 Right-click on the access point.

4 Select **Monitor Access Point Status**.

Access Point Monitor



The Access Point Monitor shows system status for the access point. It includes CPU usage, Memory Usage, Rx Rates and Tx Rates.

- 5 Click **REFRESH** if you want to refresh the data.
- 6 Click the Details icon if you want to see the details on the access point.
- 7 Click **OK** when done.

Delete an Access Point

To delete an access point in the Topology View:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Topology View**.
- 2 Roll your mouse over the access point you want to delete.
- 3 Right-click on the access point.
- 4 Select **Delete Access Point**.
- 5 Confirm that you want to delete the access point; cancel if you do not.

Configuring SonicPoint Intrusion Detection Services

Rogue devices have emerged as one of the most serious and insidious threats to wireless security. In general terms, a device is considered rogue when it has not been authorized for use on the network. The convenience, affordability and availability of non-secure access points, and the ease with which they can be added to a network creates a easy environment for introducing rogue devices. The real threat emerges in a number of different ways:

- Unintentional and unwitting connections to the rogue device
- Transmission of sensitive data over non-secure channels
- Unwanted access to LAN resources

While this doesn't represent a deficiency in the security of a specific wireless device, it is a weakness to the overall security of wireless networks.

Intrusion Detection Services (IDS) greatly increase the security capabilities of the firewall because it helps the appliance recognize and take countermeasures against the most common types of illicit wireless activity. IDS reports on all access points the firewall can find by scanning the 802.11a, 802.11g, 802.11n, and 802.11ac radio bands on the access points.

The **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > IDS** page reports on all devices detected by the firewall and its associated access points, and provides the ability to authorize legitimate devices.

#	Access Po...	MAC Addr...	SSID	Type	Channel	Authentic...	Cipher	Vendor	Signal Str...	Max Rate	Authorize
View Style: Access Point: All Access Points											
SonicPoint N2 b8fb60 - The last scan... --Perform SonicPoint/SonicWave Scan--											
1	SonicPoint...	c0:ea:e4:d...	testapi	5GHz	36	Open	NONE	SONICWALL	0% - Poor	1300 Mbps	
2	SonicPoint...	c0:ea:e4:a7...	Corp_WiFi_n	5GHz	36	WPA2	AES	SONICWALL	60% - Very...	1300 Mbps	
3	SonicPoint...	18:b1:69:7...	jack_test_v...	5GHz	36	Open	NONE	SONICWALL	18% - Poor	1733 Mbps	
4	SonicPoint...	c0:ea:e4:a7...	Guest_WiFi	5GHz	36	Open	NONE	SONICWALL	60% - Very...	1300 Mbps	
5	SonicPoint...	18:b1:69:7...	jack_test_v...	5GHz	36	Open	NONE	SONICWALL	18% - Poor	1733 Mbps	
6	SonicPoint...	c0:ea:e4:cf...	sonicwall-A...	5GHz	40	WPA2-PSK	AES	SONICWALL	78% - Very...	1300 Mbps	
7	SonicPoint...	18:b1:69:7...	sonicwall-4...	5GHz	40	Open	NONE	SONICWALL	18% - Poor	1733 Mbps	
8	SonicPoint...	18:b1:69:7...	sonicwall-4...	5GHz	40	Open	NONE	SONICWALL	18% - Poor	1733 Mbps	
9	SonicPoint...	c0:ea:e4:ba...	1122	5GHz	44	WPA2	TKIP	SONICWALL	78% - Very...	54 Mbps	
10	SonicPoint...	18:b1:69:0...	sonicwall-F...	5GHz	40	Open	NONE	SONICWALL	18% - Poor	450 Mbps	
11	SonicPoint...	18:b1:69:7...	sonicwall-0...	5GHz	40	WEP	WEP	SONICWALL	78% - Very...	54 Mbps	
12	SonicPoint...	c0:ea:e4:d...	jlian-AC-5g	5GHz	44	WEP	WEP	SONICWALL	39% - Fair	54 Mbps	

The following table describes the **Discovered Access Points** Table and entities that are displayed on the **Connectivity | Access Points > IDS** page.

Discovered Access Points Table Components

Table Column or Entity	Description
Entity	
REFRESH button	Refreshes the screen to display the most current list of access points in your network.
SCAN ALL button	Initiates an operation to call all access points and identify connected devices.
View Style: Access Point	If you have more than one access point, you can select an individual access point from the Access Point drop-down menu or All Access Points if you want to see all of them.
Discovered Access Points Table	
Access Point	The access point name: shows only when All Access Points is selected in the View Style: Access Point drop-down menu
MAC Address (BSSID)	The MAC address of the radio interface of the detected access point
SSID	The radio SSID of the device
Type	The radio band being used by the device: 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz
Channel	The radio channel used by the device
Authentication	The authentication type
Cipher	The cipher mode
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the access point
Signal Strength	The strength of the detected radio signal
Max Rate	The fastest allowable data rate for the access point radio
Authorize	When the Edit icon is clicked, the device is added to the address object group of authorized devices.

Topics:

- [Scanning Access Points](#)
- [Authorizing Access Points](#)

Scanning Access Points


Active scanning occurs when the security appliance starts up. When you request a scan after start-up, the wireless clients are interrupted for a few seconds. The scan can affect traffic in the following ways:

- Non-persistent, stateless protocols (such as HTTP) should not exhibit any ill-effects.
- Persistent connections (protocols such as FTP) are impaired or severed.
- WiFiSec connections should automatically re-establish and resume with no noticeable interruption to the client.



CAUTION: Clicking **SCAN ALL** causes all active wireless clients to be disconnected while the scan is performed. If service interruption is a concern, you should not request a scan while the SonicWall security appliance is in **Access Point** mode. Wait until no clients are active or a short interruption in service is acceptable.

To perform a scan:

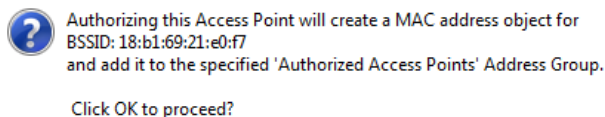
- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > IDS**.
 - 2 In the **View Style: Access Point** drop-down menu (at the top of the table), select **All Access Points** to scan all devices or choose a specific access point to scan only one device.
 - 3 At the bottom of the table:
 - If you are scanning all access points, click **SCAN ALL**.
You can optionally choose one of the options in the drop-down menu for **--Perform Access Point Scan--**: **Scan Both Radios**, **Scan Radio 0 (5GHz)** or **Scan Radio 1 (2.4GHz)**.
 - If you are scanning only one access point, choose one of the options in the drop-down menu for **--Perform Access Point Scan--**: **Scan Both Radios**, **Scan Radio 0 (5GHz)** or **Scan Radio 1 (2.4GHz)**.
-  **NOTE:** If viewing only one access point the **--Perform Access Point Scan--** moves from the top center of the table to the bottom right.
- 4 Confirm that you want to perform the scan.

Authorizing Access Points

Access Points that the security appliance detects are regarded as rogue access points until the security appliance is configured to authorize them for operation.

To authorize an access point:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > IDS**.
- 2 Click the **Edit** icon in the **Authorize** column for the access point you want to authorize. A pop-up displays.



- 3 Click **OK**.
- 4 Verify that authorization was successful by checking that the access point's MAC address was added.

Configuring Advanced IDP

Advanced Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP), or Wireless Intrusion Detection and Prevention (WIDP), monitors the radio spectrum for presence of unauthorized devices (intrusion detection) and to take countermeasures automatically (intrusion prevention) according to administrator settings. When Advanced IDP is enabled on an access point, the radio functions as a dedicated IDP sensor.

 **CAUTION:** When Advanced IDP is enabled on a SonicWall access point radio, its access point functions are disabled and any wireless clients are disconnected.

SonicOS Wireless Intrusion Detection and Prevention is based on SonicPoint and SonicWave access points cooperating with a SonicWall gateways. This feature turns your access points into dedicated WIDP sensors that detect unauthorized access points connected to a SonicWall network.

When an access point is identified as a rogue access point, its MAC address is added to the All Rogue Access address object.

Configuring Advanced IDP is a two-part process:

- [Enabling Advanced IDP on a Profile](#)
- [Configuring Advanced IDP](#)

Enabling Advanced IDP on a Profile


The following is a checklist for enabling the Advanced IDP feature. For more information on access point profiles, refer to [Creating/Modifying Provisioning Profiles](#) on page 158.

To enable Advanced IDP scanning on an access point profile:


- 1 Navigate to the **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings** page.
- 2 In the **SonicPoint/SonicWave Provisioning Profiles** section, click the **Edit** icon for the appropriate profile.
- 3 Click **Sensor**.

 **TIP:** The **Sensor** screen is the same for all SonicPoint/SonicWave profiles.

- 4 Select **Enable WIDP Sensor**. The drop-down menu becomes active.
- 5 In the drop-down menu, select the appropriate schedule for IDP scanning, or select **Create new schedule** to create a custom schedule.

 **CAUTION:** When Advanced IDP scanning is enabled on a SonicPoint/SonicWave, its access point functions are disabled and any wireless clients are disconnected.

- 6 Click **OK**.

 **NOTE:** Changes to profiles do not affect units that have already been provisioned and are in an operational state. See [Provisioning Overview](#) on page 157 for more information.

Configuring Advanced IDP

Wireless Intrusion Detection and Prevention Settings

Enable Wireless Intrusion Detection and Prevention

Authorized Access Points:

Rogue Access Points:

Add any unauthorized AP into Rogue AP list

Add connected unauthorized AP into Rogue AP list (requires active WIDP sensor)

- Enable ARP cache lookup to detect connected rogue AP
- Enable active probe to detect connected rogue AP

Add evil twin into Rogue AP list

Block traffic from rogue AP and its associated clients

Rogue Device IP addresses:

Disassociate rogue AP and its associated clients

Access Point WIDP Sensor units:

To configure Advanced IDP:

- 1 Navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Advanced IDP**.
- 2 Select **Enable Wireless Intrusion Detection and Prevention** to enable the appliance to search for rogue access points. This option is not selected by default, so when selected, the other options become active.
 - NOTE:** All detected access points are displayed in the **Discovered Access Points** table on the **Connectivity | Access Points > IDS** page, and you can authorize any allowed access points.
- 3 For **Authorized Access Points**, select the Address Object Group to which authorized Access Points are assigned. By default, this is set to **All Authorized Access Points**.
 - NOTE:** For SonicPoint Ns, no access point mode Virtual Access Point (VAP) is created. One station mode VAP is created, which is used to do IDS scans, and to connect to and send probes to unsecured access points.
- 4 For **Rogue Access Points**, select the Address Object Group to which unauthorized Access Points are assigned. By default, this is set to **All Rogue Access Points**.
- 5 Select one of the following two options to determine which access points are considered rogue (only one can be enabled at a time):
 - **Add any unauthorized AP into Rogue AP list** automatically assigns all detected unauthorized access points—regardless if they are connected to your network—to the Rogue list.
 - **Add connected unauthorized AP into Rogue AP list** assigns unauthorized devices to the Rogue list only if they are connected to your network. The following options determine how IDP detects connected rogue devices; both can be selected:
 - **Enable ARP cache search to detect connected rogue AP** – Advanced IDP searches the ARP cache for clients’ MAC addresses. When one is found and the AP it is connected to is not authorized, the AP is classified as rogue.

- **Enable active probe to detect connected rogue AP** – The SonicPoint/SonicWave connects to the suspect device and sends probes to all LAN, DMZ and WLAN interfaces of the firewall. If the firewall receives any of these probes, the AP is classified as rogue.
- 6 Select **Add evil twin into Rogue AP list** to add devices to the rogue list when they are not in the authorized list, but have the same SSID as a managed access point.
 - 7 Select **Block traffic from rogue AP and its associated clients** to drop all incoming traffic that has a source IP address that matches the rogue list. From the **Rogue Device IP addresses** drop-down menu, either:
 - Select **All Rogue Devices** (default) or an address object group you've created.
 - Create a new address object group by selecting **Create New IP Address Object Group**. The **Add Address Object Group** window displays.
 - 8 Select **Disassociate rogue AP and its associated clients** to send de-authentication messages to clients of a rogue device to stop communication between them.
 - 9 Click the **ACCEPT** button to save your changes.

Access Point Packet Capture

The **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Packet Capture** page provides an in-depth type of wireless troubleshooting that you can use to gather wireless data from a client site and output into a readable file. This feature is supported for SonicWave access points.

NOTE: Because the antenna of the scan radio is 1x1, some data frames cannot be captured by the scan radio due to hardware restrictions.

The capture view on the **Access Points > Packet Capture** page shows the status of the SonicWave, the number of packets captured, and the size of the packet buffer. At the right, the **Configure** column provides buttons you can click to configure the capture settings for each SonicWave.

Packet Capture Settings

SonicWave radio can be configured to capture 802.11 frames into PCAP for download.

Items to 1 (of 1) ⏪ ⏩

Access Point	Interface	Network Settings	Status	Capture Radio	Capture Radio Statistics	Download	Configure	Clear
SonicWave 432i 7b77ac	X2 (WLAN)	IP: 10.10.10.247 MAC: 18:b1:69:7b:77	Operational	Band: Standard Mode: 2.4GHz n/g/b Channel: 6	Trace active Packets: 20737 Size: 2951 KB Buffer: 36% full	⬇	⚙	⬇

You can configure the mode, band and channel settings in the configuration dialog, allowing you to capture wireless packets in a specific channel. You can configure up to five source and destination MAC addresses. Click the **Edit** button for the SonicWave you want to configure.

SONICWALL™ Network Security Appliance

SonicPoint/SonicWave Capture Radio Settings

Mode:

Radio Band:

Standard Channel:

SonicPoint/SonicWave 802.11 Packet Capture Settings

Enable Packet Capture

Wrap Capture Buffer Once Full

SonicPoint/SonicWave Packet Capture Filter Settings

Source MAC Address(es):

Destination MAC Address(es):

BSSID:

ESSID:

Enable Bidirectional Address Matching

Exclude Beacon

Exclude Probe Request

Exclude Probe Response

Exclude Control

Exclude Data

To capture the data for one of configured SonicWave radios, click the **Download** button for that row on the **Connectivity | Access Points > Packet Capture** page. The capture file is named with the format, "wirelessCapture_[SW name].cap", where *SW name* is the SonicWave name. Wireshark™ can be used to read the file.

Configuring Virtual Access Points

NOTE: Virtual access points are supported when using wireless access points along with SonicWall network security appliances.

A Virtual Access Point (VAP) is a multiplexed representation of a single physical access point—it presents itself as multiple discrete access points. To wireless LAN clients, each virtual access point appears to be an independent physical access point, when actually only one physical access point exists. VAPs allow you to control wireless user access and security settings by setting up multiple custom configurations on a single physical interface. Each of these custom configurations acts as a separate (virtual) access point and can be grouped and enforced on a single internal wireless radio.

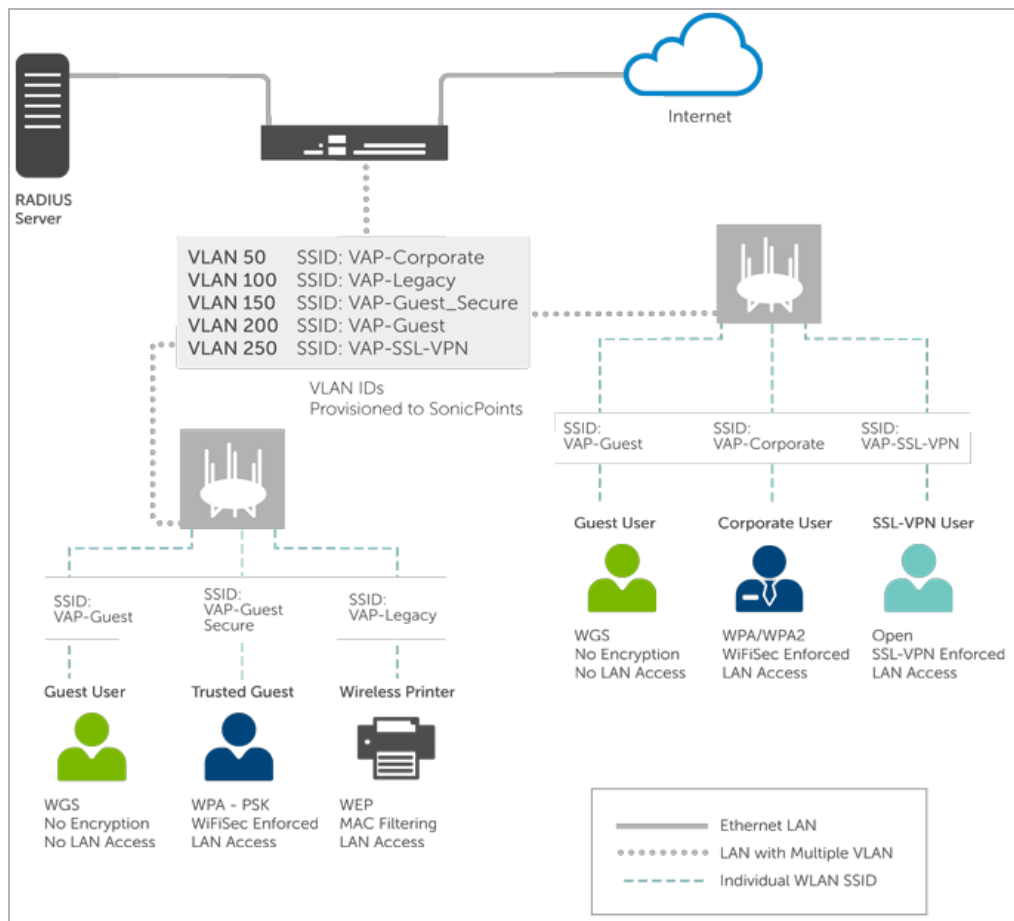
The SonicWall VAP feature is in compliance with the IEEE 802.11 standard for the media access control (MAC) protocol layer that includes a unique Basic Service Set Identifier (BSSID) and Service Set Identified (SSID). This segments the wireless network services within a single radio frequency footprint on a single physical access point.

VAPs allow you to control wireless user access and security settings by setting up multiple custom configurations on a single physical interface. Each of these custom configurations acts as a separate (virtual) access point, and can be grouped and enforced on single or multiple physical access points simultaneously.

Topics:

- [Before Configuring VAPs](#)
- [Access Point VAP Configuration Task List](#)
- [Virtual Access Points Profiles](#)
- [Virtual Access Points](#)
- [Virtual Access Point Groups](#)

Virtual Access Point Configuration



VAPs afford the following benefits:

- Each VAP can have its own security services settings (for example, GAV, IPS, CFS, etc.).
- Traffic from each VAP can be easily controlled using access rules configured from the zone level.
- Separate Guest Services or Lightweight Hotspot Messaging (LHM) configurations can be applied to each, facilitating the presentation of multiple guest service providers with a common set of access points.
- Bandwidth management and other access rule-based controls can easily be applied.

Before Configuring VAPs

Before configuring your virtual access points, you need to have an understanding of what your options are and what you can do.

Topics:

- [Determining Your VAP Needs](#)
- [Determining Security Configurations](#)
- [Sample Network Definitions](#)
- [Determining Security Configurations](#)
- [VAP Configuration Worksheet](#)

Determining Your VAP Needs

When deciding how to configure your VAPs, begin by considering your communication needs, particularly:

- How many different classes of wireless users do I need to support?
- How do I want to secure these different classes of wireless users?
- Do my wireless client have the required hardware and drivers to support the chosen security settings?
- What network resources do my wireless users need to communicate with?
- Do any of these wireless users need to communicate with other wireless users?
- What security services do I wish to apply to each of these classes or wireless users?

Determining Security Configurations

After understanding your security requirements, you can then define the zones (and interfaces) and VAPs that provide the most effective wireless services to these users. The following are examples of ways you can define certain types of users.

- **Corp Wireless** – Highly trusted wireless zone. Employs WPA2-AUTO-EAP security. WiFiSec (WPA) Enforced.
- **WEP & PSK** – Moderate trust wireless zone. Comprises two virtual APs and subinterfaces, one for legacy WEP devices (for example, wireless printers, older handheld devices) and one for visiting clients who will use WPA-PSK security.
- **Guest Services** – Using the internal Guest Services user database.
- **LHM** – Lightweight Hotspot Messaging enabled zone, configured to use external LHM authentication-back-end server.

Sample Network Definitions

The following list shows one possible way you can configure your virtual access points to ensure proper access:

- **VAP #1, Corporate Wireless Users** – A set of users who are commonly in the office, and to whom should be given full access to all network resources, providing that the connection is authenticated and secure. These users already belong to the network's Directory Service, Microsoft Active Directory, which provides an EAP interface through IAS – Internet Authentication Services.
- **VAP#2, Legacy Wireless Devices** – A collection of older wireless devices, such as printers, PDAs and handheld devices, that are only capable of WEP encryption.
- **VAP#3, Visiting Partners** – Business partners, clients, and affiliated who frequently visit the office, and who need access to a limited set of trusted network resources, as well as the Internet. These users are not located in the company's Directory Services.
- **VAP# 4, Guest Users** – Visiting clients to whom you wish to provide access only to untrusted (for example, Internet) network resources. Some guest users will be provided a simple, temporary username and password for access.
- **VAP#5, Frequent Guest Users** – Same as Guest Users, however, these users will have more permanent guest accounts through a back-end database.

Prerequisites

Before configuring your virtual access points, be aware of the following:

- Each SonicWall access point must be explicitly enabled for virtual access point support. To verify, navigate to **Connectivity | Access Points > Base Settings**. Then click the **Edit** icon for the **SonicPoint/SonicWave Provisioning Profiles > General Settings**. Select the **Enable SonicPoint/SonicWave** checkbox and enable one or both selections under **Virtual Access Point Settings**.
- Access points must be linked to a WLAN zone on your SonicWall network security appliance to provision the access points.
- When using VAPs with VLANs, you must ensure that the physical access point discovery and provisioning packets remain untagged (unless being terminated natively into a VLAN subinterface on the firewall).
- You must also ensure that VAP packets that are VLAN tagged by the access point are delivered unaltered (neither un-encapsulated nor double-encapsulated) by any intermediate equipment, such as a VLAN capable switch, on the network.
- Be aware that maximum access point restrictions apply and differ based on your SonicWall security appliance.

VAP Configuration Worksheet

The [VAP Configuration Worksheet](#) provides some common VAP setup questions and solutions along with a space for you to record your own configurations.

VAP Configuration Worksheet

Questions	Examples	Solutions
How many different types of users will I need to support?	Corporate wireless, guest access, visiting partners, wireless devices are all common user types, each requiring their own VAP	Plan out the number of different VAPs needed. Configure a zone and VLAN for each VAP needed
Your Configurations:		
How many users will each VAP need to support?	A corporate campus has 100 employees, all of whom have wireless capabilities	The DHCP scope for the visitor zone is set to provide at least 100 addresses
	A corporate campus often has a few dozen wireless capable visitors	The DHCP scope for the visitor zone is set to provide at least 25 addresses
Your Configurations:		

VAP Configuration Worksheet

Questions	Examples	Solutions
How do I want to secure different wireless users?	A corporate user who has access to corporate LAN resources.	Configure WPA2-EAP
	A guest user who is restricted to only Internet access	Enable Guest Services but configure no security settings
	A legacy wireless printer on the corporate LAN	Configure WEP and enable MAC address filtering
	Your Configurations:	
What network resources do my users need to communicate with?	A corporate user who needs access to the corporate LAN and all internal LAN resources, including other WLAN users.	Enable Interface Trust on your corporate zone.
	A wireless guest who needs to access Internet and should not be allowed to communicate with other WLAN users.	Disable Interface Trust on your guest zone.
	Your Configurations:	
What security services to I wish to apply to my users?	Corporate users who you want protected by the full SonicWall security suite.	Enable all SonicWall security services.
	Guest users who you do not give a hoot about since they are not even on your LAN.	Disable all SonicWall security services.
	Your Configurations:	

Access Point VAP Configuration Task List

An access point VAP deployment requires several steps to configure. The following section provides a brief overview of the steps involved.

- 1 **Network Zone** - The zone is the backbone of your VAP configuration. Each zone you create has its own security and access control settings and you can create and apply multiple zones to a single physical interface by way of VLAN subinterfaces. For more information on network zones, refer to the section on **Manage | Network > Zones** in *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup*.
- 2 **Interface (or VLAN Subinterface)** - The Interface (X2, X3, etc...) represents the physical connection between your SonicWall network security appliance and your physical access points. Your individual zone settings are applied to these interfaces and then forwarded to your access points. For more information

on wireless interfaces, refer to the section on **Manage | System Setup | Network > Interfaces** in *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup*.

- 3 **DHCP Server** - The DHCP server assigns leased IP addresses to users within specified ranges, known as *Scopes*. The default ranges for DHCP scopes are often excessive for the needs of most access points, for instance, a scope of 200 addresses for an interface that only uses 30. Because of this, DHCP ranges must be set carefully in order to ensure the available lease scope is not exhausted. For more information on setting up the DHCP server, refer to the section on **Manage | System Setup | Network > DHCP Server** in *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 System Setup*.
- 4 **Virtual Access Point Profiles** - The **Virtual Access Point Profile** feature allows for creation of access point configuration profiles which can be easily applied to new virtual access points as needed. Refer to **Virtual Access Points Profiles** for more information.
- 5 **Virtual Access Point Objects** - The **Virtual Access Point Objects** feature allows for setup of general VAP settings. SSID and VLAN ID are configured through VAP Settings. Refer to **Virtual Access Points** for more information.
- 6 **Virtual Access Point Groups** - The **Virtual Access Point Groups** feature allows grouping of multiple virtual access point objects to be simultaneously applied to your access points.
- 7 **Assign Virtual Access Group to Access Point Provisioning Profile Radio**- The Provisioning Profile allows a VAP Group to be applied to new access points as they are provisioned.
- 8 **Assign WEP Key (for WEP encryption only)** - The Assign WEP Key allows for a WEP Encryption Key to be applied to new access points as they are provisioned. WEP keys are configured per-access point, meaning that any WEP-enabled virtual access points assigned to a physical access point must use the same set of WEP keys. Up to 4 keys can be defined, and WEP-enabled VAPs can use these 4 keys independently. WEP keys are configured on individual physical access points or on Access Point Profiles from the **Configuration | Access Points > Base Settings** page.

Virtual Access Points Profiles

A Virtual Access Point Profile allows you to pre-configure and save access point settings in a profile. Virtual Access Point Profiles allows settings to be easily applied to new virtual access points. Virtual Access Point Profiles are configured from the **Virtual Access Point Profiles** section of the **Connectivity | Access Points > Virtual Access Point** page.

Virtual Access Point Profiles

Items 1 to 2 (of 2)

<input type="checkbox"/>	#	Name	Type	Authentication	Cipher	Max Clients	Configure
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Guest VAP with Remote MAC	SonicPoint/SonicW...	Open	None	16	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Guest-VAP Profile	SonicPoint/SonicW...	Open	None	16	

To configure an existing VAP profile, click the **Edit** icon for that profile. To add a new VAP profile, click the **ADD** button.

NOTE: Options displayed change depending on your selection of other options.

Virtual Access Point Schedule Settings

VAP Schedule Name:

Virtual Access Point Profile Settings

Radio Type:

Profile Name:

Authentication Type:

Unicast Cipher:

Maximum Clients:

Enable VAP WDS

ACL Enforcement

Enable MAC Filter List

Use Global ACL Settings

Allow List:

Deny List:

Note: ACL support per Virtual Access Point is only supported by SonicPoint-N/AC and SonicWave. If one Virtual Access Point is used by SonicPoint, global ACL configuration will be applied by default.

Remote MAC Address Access Control Settings

Enable Remote MAC Access Control

Topics:

- [Virtual Access Point Schedule Settings](#)
- [Virtual Access Point Profile Settings](#)
- [ACL Enforcement](#)
- [Remote MAC Address Access Control Settings](#)

Virtual Access Point Schedule Settings

Each Virtual Access Point can have its own schedule associated with it and by extension each profile can have a set schedule defined for it as well.

To associate a schedule with a Virtual Access Point Profile:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Virtual Access Point**.
- 2 Under **Virtual Access Point Profiles**, select **ADD** if creating a new profile, or select a Virtual Access Point Profile and click on the **Edit** icon if editing an existing profile.

- 3 In the **VAP Schedule Name** field, select the schedule you want from the options in the drop-down menu.

Virtual Access Point Profile Settings

To set the Virtual Access Point Profile settings:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Virtual Access Point**.
- 2 Under **Virtual Access Point Profiles**, select **ADD** if creating a new profile, or select a Virtual Access Point Profile and click on the **Edit** icon if editing an existing profile.
- 3 Set the **Radio Type**. It is set to **SonicPoint/SonicWave** by default if using the access points as virtual access points (currently the only supported radio type).
- 4 In the **Profile Name** field, type a friendly name for this Virtual Access Point Profile. Choose something descriptive and easy to remember as you apply this profile to new VAPs.
- 5 Select the **Authentication Type** from the drop-down list. Choose from these options:

Authentication Type	Definition
Open	No authentication is specified; unsecured access.
Shared	A shared key is used to authenticate and ensure basis security.
Both	Unsecured, shared access.
WPA2-PSK	Best security used with trusted corporate wireless clients. Transparent authentication with Windows login. Supports fast-roaming feature. Uses pre-shared key for authentication.
WPA2-EAP	Best security used with trusted corporate wireless clients. Transparent authentication with Windows login. Supports fast-roaming feature. Uses extensible authentication protocol.
WPA2-AUTO-PSK	Tries to connect using WPA2 security, if the client is not WPA2 capable, the connection defaults to WPA. Uses pre-shared key for authentication.
WPA2-AUTO-EAP	Tries to connect using WPA2 security, if the client is not WPA2 capable, the connection defaults to WPA. Uses extensible authentication protocol.

The **Unicast Cipher** field is auto-populated based on what authentication type you selected.

 **NOTE:** Different settings appear on the page depending upon which option you select.

Depending on the **Authentication Type** selected, an additional section with options is added to the Add/Edit Virtual Access Point Profile page.

- If you selected **Open**, no additional authentication settings are required.
- If you selected **Both** or **Shared**, refer to [WEP Encryption Settings](#) for information on the settings.
- If you selected an option requiring a pre-shared key (PSK), refer to [WPA-PSK > WPA2-PSK Encryption Settings](#) for information on the settings.
- If you selected an option using the extensible authentication protocol (EAP), the **Radius Server Settings** and **Radius Accounting Server Settings** sections are displayed. Refer to [Radius Server and Radius Accounting](#) on page 210 for information on the settings.

WEP Encryption Settings

If you selected **Both** or **Shared** in [Step 5](#) of the prior procedure, the section called **WEP Encryption Settings** appears. WEP settings are commonly shared by virtual access points within a common physical access point.

To set the encryption settings:

- 1 In the **Encryption Key** field, select **Key 1**, **Key 2**, **Key 3** or **Key 4** from the drop-down list.
- 2 Go to [ACL Enforcement](#) on page [211](#) to continue the configuration.

WPA-PSK > WPA2-PSK Encryption Settings

If you selected an option in [Step 5](#) that requires a pre-shared key—**WPA2-PSK** or **WPA2-AUTO-PSK**—the section called **WPA/WPA2-PSK Encryption Settings** appears. When these settings are defined, a preshared key is used for authentication.

To set the encryption settings:

- 1 Input a password in the **Pass Phrase** field for the public shared key.
- 2 Set the **Group Key Interval** in seconds. This is the time period for which a group key is valid and after which the group key is forced to be updated. The default is **86400** seconds (24 hours).
- 3 Go to [ACL Enforcement](#) on page [211](#) to continue the configuration.

Radius Server and Radius Accounting

You can set up a RADIUS server for any of the options selected in [Step 5](#). When these settings are defined, an external 802.1x/EAP capable RADIUS server is used for key generation and authentication. Input values in the following fields:

To set the Radius Server Settings:

Field Name	Description
Radius Server Retries	Enter the number times a user can try to authenticate before access is denied. The default is 4.
Retry Interval (seconds)	Enter the time period during which retries are valid. The default is 0.
RADIUS Server 1	Input the name/location of the RADIUS authentication server.
Port	Input the port on which your primary RADIUS authentication server communicates with clients and network devices.
RADIUS Server 1 Secret	Enter the secret passcode for your primary RADIUS authentication server.
RADIUS Server 2	Input the name/location of your backup RADIUS authentication server.
Port	Input the port on which your backup RADIUS authentication server communicates with clients and network devices.
RADIUS Server 2 Secret	Enter the secret passcode for your backup RADIUS authentication server.

To set the Radius Accounting Server Settings:

Field Name	Description
Server 1 IP	Enter the IP address for the first RADIUS server.
Port	Input the port on which your primary RADIUS accounting server communicates with clients and network devices.
Server 1 Secret	Enter the secret passcode for your primary RADIUS accounting server.
Server 2 IP	Enter the IP address for the backup RADIUS server.
Port	Input the port on which your backup RADIUS accounting server communicates with clients and network devices.
Server 2 Secret	Enter the secret passcode for your backup RADIUS accounting server.
NAS Identifier Type	Select the NAS Identifier Type from the drop-down menu. Options include: Not Included (default), Access Point Name and Access Point MAC Address
NAS IP Addr	Input the NAS system IP address.
Group Key Interval	The time period, in seconds, for which a group key is valid and after which the group key is forced to be updated. The default is 86400 seconds (24 hours).

ACL Enforcement

Each virtual access point can support an individual Access Control List (ACL) to provide more effective authentication control. The wireless ACL feature works in tandem with the wireless MAC Filter List currently available on SonicOS. Using the ACL Enforcement feature, users are able to enable or disable the MAC Filter List, set the Allow List, and set the Deny list.

Each VAP can have its own MAC Filter List settings or use the global settings. When the global settings are enabled, the SonicPoint/SonicWave appliance uses these settings by default. In Virtual Access Point (VAP) mode, each VAP of this group shares the same MAC Filter List settings.

ACL Enforcement settings

Option	Description
Enable MAC Filter List	Enforces Access Control by allowing or denying traffic from specific devices. By default, this option is not selected and all options in this section are dimmed and unavailable.
Use Global ACL Settings	Uses global ACL settings. NOTE: ACL support per virtual access point is only supported by SonicPointN. If one virtual access point is used by SonicPoint/SonicWave, global ACL configuration is applied by default.

ACL Enforcement settings

Option	Description
Allow List	Select a MAC address group to automatically allow traffic from all devices with the MAC addresses listed in a particular group: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Create new Mac Address Object Group...• All MAC Addresses NOTE: It is recommended that the Allow List be set to All MAC Addresses . <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Default SonicPoint ACL Allow Group• Custom MAC Address Object Groups that you developed
Deny List	Select a MAC address group from the drop-down menu to automatically deny traffic from all devices with MAC address in the group. NOTE: The Deny List is enforced before the Allow List . <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Create new Mac Address Object Group...• No MAC Addresses• Default SonicPoint ACL Deny Group NOTE: It is recommended that the Deny List be set to Default SonicPoint ACL Deny Group . <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Custom MAC Address Object Groups that you developed

Remote MAC Address Access Control Settings

 **NOTE:** This section is not displayed if **WPA2-EAP/WPA2-AUTO-EAP** is selected for **Authentication Type**.

Remote MAC Address Access Control settings













Option	Description
Enable Remote MAC Access Control	Check the box to enforce radio wireless access control based on MAC-based authentication policy in a remote Radius server. By default, this option is not selected. NOTE: If you selected other than WPA2-EAP/WPA2-AUTO-EAP for Authentication Type , selecting Enable Remote MAC Access Control displays the Radius Server Settings section.

Virtual Access Points

Virtual access points SSID, VLAN ID, and other general and advanced settings are configured from the **Virtual Access Points** section of the **Connectivity | Access Points > Virtual Access Point** page.

Virtual Access Points

Items to 3 (of 3) 

<input type="checkbox"/> #	NAME	SSID	VLAN ID	Authentication	Cipher	Max Clients	SSID Suppress	<input type="checkbox"/> E...	Active	Configure
<input type="checkbox"/> 1	Guest VAP 2	Guest VAP 2	0	Open	None	16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		  
<input type="checkbox"/> 2	Guest VAP with MAC	Guest VAP with MAC	0	Open	None	16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		  
<input type="checkbox"/> 3	Guest VAP	Guest-VAP	0	Open	None	16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		  

To configure an existing VAP, click the **Edit** icon for that virtual access point. To add a new VAP, click the **ADD** button.

Topics:

- [General Settings](#)
- [Advanced Settings](#)

General Settings

Set the following features on the **General** screen.

Virtual Access Point General Settings

Feature	Description
Name	Create a friendly name for your VAP.
SSID	Enter an SSID name for the access points using this VAP. This name appears in wireless client lists when searching for available access points.
VLAN ID	When using platforms that support VLAN, you may optionally select a VLAN ID to associate this VAP with. Settings for this VAP will be inherited from the VLAN you select.
Enable Virtual Access Point	Enables this VAP. This option is selected by default.
Enable SSID Suppress	Suppresses broadcasting of the SSID name and disables responses to probe requests. Check this option if you do not wish for your SSID to be seen by unauthorized wireless clients. This option is not selected by default.
Enable Dynamic VLAN ID Assignment	Check to enable. Dynamic VLAN can only be enabled when the authentication type is set to EAP.

Advanced Settings

General **Advanced**

Virtual Access Point Schedule Settings

VAP Schedule Name:

Virtual Access Point Advanced Settings

Profile Name:

Radio Type:

Authentication Type:

Cipher Type:

Maximum Clients:

Enable VAP WDS

ACL Enforcement

Enable MAC Filter List

Use Global ACL Settings

Allow List:

Deny List:

Note: ACL support per Virtual Access Point is supported by SonicPoint-N/AC and SonicWave. If one Virtual Access Point is used by SonicPoint, global ACL configuration will be applied by default.

Remote MAC Address Access Control Settings

Enable Remote MAC Access Control

Advanced settings allows you to configure authentication and encryption settings for a specific virtual access point. Choose a **Profile Name** to inherit these settings from a user-created profile. As the **Advanced** screen of the **Add/Edit Virtual Access Point** window is the same as **Add/Edit Virtual Access Point Profile** window, see [Virtual Access Points Profiles](#) for complete authentication and encryption configuration information.

Virtual Access Point Groups

The **Virtual Access Point Groups** section allows for grouping of multiple VAP objects to be simultaneously applied to your access points. Virtual Access Point Groups are configured from the **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Virtual Access Point** page.

Virtual Access Point Groups

Items 1 to 2 (of 2)

<input type="checkbox"/>	#	Name	Ssid	VLAN ID	Authentication	Cipher	Max Clients	SSID Suppress	Enable	Active	Configure
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Guest VAP Group									
		Guest VAP	Guest-VAP	0	Open	None	16				
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Guest VAP Group 2									
		Guest VAP	Guest-VAP	0	Open	None	16				
		Guest VAP 2	Guest VAP 2	0	Open	None	16				
		Guest VAP with MAC	Guest VAP with MAC	0	Open	None	16				

To add or edit a virtual access point group:

- 1 Navigate to **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Virtual Access Point**.
- 2 Under **Virtual Access Point Groups**, select **ADD GROUP** if creating a new group, or select a Virtual Access Point group and click on the **Edit** icon if editing an existing group.

Virtual AP Group Name:

Available Virtual AP Objects:

Guest VAP
 Guest VAP Group
 Guest VAP 2
 Guest VAP Group 2
 Guest VAP with MAC

Member Of Virtual AP Group:

Ready

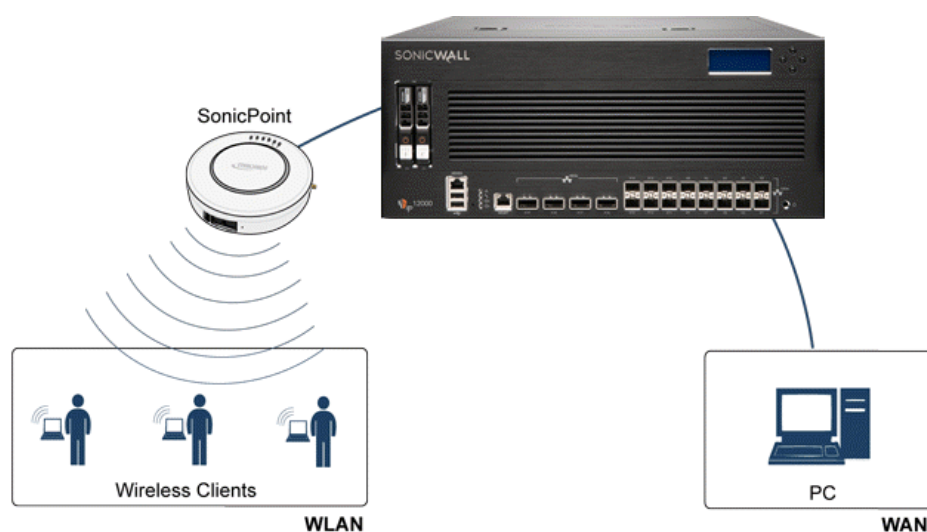
- 3 Enter the **Virtual AP Group Name** in the field provided.
- 4 Select the objects you want to add from the **Available Virtual AP Objects** list and click the **Right Arrow** to move it to the **Member of Virtual AP Group** list.
Or, click **ADD ALL** to add all the objects to the group.
- 5 Select an object and use the **Left Arrow** or the **REMOVE ALL** button to remove objects from the group.
- 6 Click **OK** to save your settings.

Configuring FairNet

The FairNet feature provides an easy-to-use method for network administrators to control the bandwidth of associated wireless clients and make sure it is distributed fairly between them. Administrators can configure the FairNet bandwidth limits for all wireless clients, specific IP address ranges, or individual clients to provide fairness and network efficiency.

This is an example of typical FairNet topology:

Typical FairNet Topology



To deploy the FairNet feature, you must have a laptop or PC with a IEEE802.11b/g/n/ac wireless network interface controller.

Topics:

- [FairNet Features](#)
- [Management Interface Overview](#)
- [Configuring FairNet](#)

FairNet Features

The Distributed Coordination Function (DCF) provides timing fairness for each client to access a medium with equal opportunity. However it can not guarantee the per-station data traffic fairness among all wireless clients. The FairNet feature is implemented on top of the existing 802.11 DCF to guarantee fair bandwidth among wireless clients regardless of the number and direction of flows.

The traffic control feature decides if packets are queued or dropped (for example, if the queue has reached some length limit, or if the traffic exceeds some rate limit). It can also decide in which order packets are sent (for

example, to give priority to certain ones), and it can delay the sending of packets (for example, to limit the rate of outbound traffic). Once traffic control has released a packet for sending, the device driver picks it up and emits it on the network.

Management Interface Overview

The components of the FairNet display are described in the following table.

FairNet Settings

Enable FairNet

FairNet Policies

<input type="checkbox"/>	Direction	Start IP	End IP	Min Rate(kbps)	Max Rate(kbps)	Interface	Enable	Configure
<input type="checkbox"/>	Downlink	10.10.10.2	10.10.10.20	500	1000	X2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Uplink	10.10.10.21	10.10.10.30	600	1200	X2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

FairNet Interface Components

Name	Description
Buttons and checkboxes	
ADD	Adds a FairNet policy for an IP address or range of addresses. Displays the Add Fairnet Policy dialog.
DELETE	Deletes the selected FairNet policies.
ACCEPT	Applies the latest configuration settings.
CANCEL	Cancels any changed configuration settings.
Checkboxes	
Enable FairNet	Enables the FairNet feature.
FairNet Policies	In the FairNet Policies table header: Selects or deselects all the policies in the FairNet Policies table. Individual policies can also be selected from the policies list.
Fairnet Policies Table Columns	
Direction	Displays the direction for each policy. The directions include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Uplink • Downlink • Both
Start IP	Displays the start point for the IP address range.
End IP	Displays the end point for the IP address range.
Min Rate (kbps)	The minimum bandwidth that clients are guaranteed. Minimum rate is 1 Kbps.
Max Rate (kbps)	The maximum bandwidth that clients are guaranteed. Maximum rate is 54000 Kbps.
Interface	Displays the interface to which the FairNet policy applies. This is the interface on the managing firewall that the access point is connected to.

FairNet Interface Components

Name	Description
Enable	Enables the selected FairNet policy when the box is checked.
Configure	Edits existing FairNet policies when the Edit icon is clicked. Deletes the specific FairNet policy when the Delete icon is clicked.

Configuring FairNet

This section contains an example FairNet configuration.

To configure FairNet to provide more bandwidth in both directions:

- 1 Navigate to the **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > FairNet** page.
- 2 Click the **ADD** button.

The screenshot shows a configuration dialog for FairNet. It includes a checked 'Enable policy' checkbox, a 'Direction' dropdown menu set to 'Both Direction', and input fields for 'Start IP', 'End IP', 'Min Rate(kbps)', and 'Max Rate(kbps)'. The 'Interface' dropdown is set to 'X2'. At the bottom, there is a 'Ready' status bar and 'OK' and 'CANCEL' buttons.

- 3 Check the **Enable Policy** box. This is checked by default.
 - 4 From the **Direction** drop-down menu, select **Both Directions**. This applies the policy to clients uploading content and downloading content. This is the default.
 - 5 In the **Start IP** field, enter the starting IP address (for example, 172 . 16 . 29 . 100) for the FairNet policy.
 - 6 In the **End IP** field, enter the ending IP address (for example, 172 . 16 . 29 . 110) for the FairNet policy.
TIP: The IP address range must be on a subnet that is configured for a WLAN interface.
 - 7 In the **Min Rate (kbps)** field, enter the minimum bandwidth for the FairNet policy. The minimum and default is 100Kbps, and the maximum is 300Mbps (300,000Kbps).
 - 8 In the **Max Rate (kbps)** field, enter the maximum bandwidth for the FairNet policy. The minimum and default is 100Kbps, and the maximum is 300Mbps (300,000Kbps), although a typical setting is 20Mbps.
 - 9 From the **Interface** drop-down menu, select the interface (for example, X2) that the access point is connected to.
 - 10 Click the **OK** button and the FairNet Policy is added to the **FairNet Policies** table.
 - 11 Click the **Enable** checkbox.
 - 12 Click the **ACCEPT** button.
- Your SonicWall FairNet policy is now configured.

Configuring Wi-Fi MultiMedia

SonicOS access points support Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) to provide a better Quality of Service (QoS) experience on bandwidth-intensive applications such as VoIP, VoIP on Wi-Fi phones, and multimedia traffic on wireless IEEE 802.11 networks. WMM is configured on the **MANAGE | Connectivity | Access Points > Wi-Fi Multimedia** page.

WMM is a Wi-Fi Alliance interoperability certification based on the IEEE 802.11e standard that prioritizes traffic according to four Access Categories:

- **Voice**—highest priority
- **Video**—second priority
- **Best effort**—third priority (intended for applications like email and Internet surfing)
- **Background**—fourth priority (intended for applications that are not latency sensitive, such as printing)

 **NOTE:** WMM does not provide guaranteed throughput.

Topics:

- [WMM Access Categories](#)
- [Assigning Traffic to Access Categories](#)
- [Configuring Wi-Fi Multimedia Parameters](#)
- [Deleting WMM Profiles](#)

WMM Access Categories

Each Access Category has its own transmit queue. Traffic is assigned to the appropriate Access Category based on type of service (ToS) information that is provided by either the application or the firewall. SonicWall security appliances assign ToS either through access rules or VLAN tagging.

The [Wi-Fi Multimedia Access Categories](#) table shows how the WMM Access Categories map to 802.1D user priorities.

Default WMM Parameters for SonicWall Security Appliances

WMM Access Category (AC)	WMM AC Designation (informative)	CWMin	CWMax	AIFS
AC_BE(0)	Best Effort	4	10	3
AC_BK(1)	Background	4	10	7
AC_VI(2)	Video	3	4	2
AC_VO(3)	Voice	2	3	2

Assigning Traffic to Access Categories

WMM requires the access points to implement multiple queues for multiple priority access categories. To differentiate traffic types, the access point relies on either the application or the firewall to provide type of service (TOS) information in the IP data. SonicWall security appliances assign traffic to WMM Access Categories through two methods:

- [Specifying Firewall Services and Access Rules](#)
- [VLAN Tagging](#)

Specifying Firewall Services and Access Rules

Services using a certain port can be prioritized and put into a proper transmit queue. For example, UDP traffic sending to port 2427 can be regarded as a video stream. Add a custom service on the **Policies | Objects > Service Objects** page. Refer to *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 Policies* for more information.

At least one access rule should be added on the **Policies | Rules > Access Rules** page for the new service. For example, when such a service happens from a station on the LAN zone to a wireless client on the LAN zone to a wireless client on the WLAN zone, an access rule can be configured in the **General** screen of the **Add Rule** window. In the **QoS** screen of the **Add Rule** window, an explicit DSCP value is defined.

Later, when packets are sent to the access point through the firewall using UDP protocol with destination port 2427, their TOS fields are set according to the QoS setting in the access rule.

VLAN Tagging

Prioritization is possible in VLAN over virtual access point because the SonicWave, SonicPoint N and ACs allow a virtual access point to be configured to connect with a VLAN by using same VLAN ID. You can set priority for VLAN traffic through a firewall access rule.

The firewall access rule is similar to setting priority for a UDP service destined to a port such as 2427, but is configured with a VLAN (VLAN over VAP) interface, such as WLAN Subnets, as the **Source** and **Destination** is a WLAN-to-WLAN rule. Refer to **Policies | Rules > Access Rules** in *SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 Policies* for more information.

Configuring Wi-Fi Multimedia Parameters

This section starts from a WMM profile configured on the SonicWall security appliance with the parameters set to the values on the 802.11e standard.

Topics:

- [Configuring WMM](#)
- [Creating a WMM Profile for an Access Point](#)
- [Deleting WMM Profiles](#)

Configuring WMM

To customize the WMM configuration:

1. Navigate to the **Connectivity | Access Points > Wi-Fi Multimedia** page.

The screenshot displays the 'WMM Settings' interface. At the top right, there is a pagination control showing 'Items 1 to 1 (of 1)'. Below this are three buttons: 'ADD', 'DELETE', and 'DELETE ALL'. A table with the following structure is shown:

<input type="checkbox"/>	#	Name	Configure
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	wmmDefault	

Below the table, there are three buttons: 'ADD', 'DELETE', and 'DELETE ALL'.

- To modify the WMM profile, click the **Edit** icon for that profile. Or, to create a new WMM profile, click the **ADD** button.

Settings **Mapping**

WMM Profile Settings

Profile Name:

WMM Parameters of Access Point

Access Category	CWMin	CWMax	AIFS
AC_BE(0)	<input type="text" value="4"/>	<input type="text" value="6"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>
AC_BK(1)	<input type="text" value="4"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>	<input type="text" value="7"/>
AC_VI(2)	<input type="text" value="3"/>	<input type="text" value="4"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>
AC_VO(3)	<input type="text" value="2"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>

WMM Parameters of Station

Access Category	CWMin	CWMax	AIFS
AC_BE(0)	<input type="text" value="4"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>
AC_BK(1)	<input type="text" value="4"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/>	<input type="text" value="7"/>
AC_VI(2)	<input type="text" value="3"/>	<input type="text" value="4"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/>
AC_VO(3)	<input type="text" value="2"/>	<input type="text" value="3"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/>

- For a new WMM profile, enter a **Profile Name**.
- Modify the parameters to customize the WMM profile; the default WMM parameter values are auto-populated in the window. For information about these categories, see [Wi-Fi Multimedia Access Categories](#).

i **NOTE:** When configuring the WMM profile, you can configure the size of the contention window (CWMin/CWMax) and the arbitration interframe space (AIFS) number when creating a WMM profile. These values can be configured individually for each priority, AC_BK, AC_BE, AC_VI, and AC_VO on the access point (SonicPointN) and for the station (firewall).

- Click **Mapping** to customize how the Access Categories are mapped to DSCP values.

Settings **Mapping**

WMM Mapping

Access Category	DSCP
AC_BE(0)	<input type="text" value="0"/>
AC_BK(1)	<input type="text" value="8"/>
AC_VI(2)	<input type="text" value="40"/>
AC_VO(3)	<input type="text" value="48"/>

- Map priority levels to DSCP values. The default DSCP values are as same as the ones in **Policies | Rules > Access Rules, QoS** mapping.
- Click **OK**.

Creating a WMM Profile for an Access Point

The **Connectivity | Access Points > Wi-Fi Multimedia** page on the **MANAGE** view provides a way to configure WMM profiles, including parameters and priority mappings.

You can also create a WMM profile or select an existing WMM profile when configuring a SonicWave, SonicPoint N or a SonicPoint AC Profile from the **Access Points > Base Settings** page. The **Configuration** window provides a **WMM (Wi-Fi Multimedia)** drop-down menu on the **Radio 0/1 Advanced** screens.

Selecting **Create New WMM Profile...** from the **WMM (Wi-Fi Multimedia)** drop-down menu displays the **Add Wlan WMM Profile** Window.

Deleting WMM Profiles

To delete a single WMM Profile, click the **Delete** icon in the profile's **Configure** column.

To delete multiple WMM Profiles, check the boxes next to the profiles to delete, and then click the **DELETE** button.

To delete all WMM Profiles, click the **DELETE ALL** button. A pop-up message appears to confirm that all profiles are to be deleted.

Access Point 3G/4G/LTE WWAN

If you have a 3G/4G/LTE device connected to one of your access points, the **Connectivity | Access Points > 3G/4G/LTE WWAN** page offers monitoring information on that device.

SonicPoint/SonicWave 3G/4G/LTE Settings


SonicPoint/SonicWave can connect to 3G/4G/LTE device to provide WAN connection.

SonicPoint N2 b8392c 3G/4G/LTE Modem Status

The 3G/4G is currently Connected

WAN Port:	X4:V41
Gateway (Router) Address:	169.254.44.57
IP (NAT Public) Address:	166.130.63.157
DNS Server 1:	166.216.138.41
DNS Server 2:	166.216.138.42
Modem Type:	Sierra (Direct IP)
USB Modem Product:	AirCard 313U
Service Type:	LTE

Signal Strength: Good (-73 dBm)



The first panel provides connectivity data and modem status, and the second panel shows a graphical representation of the device's signal strength.

Click the **REFRESH** button to refresh the data on the screen.

If no 3G/4G/LTE device is detected on one of your access points, you get the following message on the **Connectivity | Access Points > 3G/4G/LTE WWAN** page:

SonicPoint/SonicWave 3G/4G/LTE Settings

SonicPoint/SonicWave can connect to 3G/4G/LTE device to provide WAN connection.

SonicPoint/SonicWave 3G/4G/LTE Status

- No device was detected.

Connectivity | Support

- [SonicWall Support](#)

SonicWall Support

Technical support is available to customers who have purchased SonicWall products with a valid maintenance contract and to customers who have trial versions.

The Support Portal provides self-help tools you can use to solve problems quickly and independently, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. To access the Support Portal, go to <https://www.sonicwall.com/support>.

The Support Portal enables you to:

- View knowledge base articles and technical documentation
- View video tutorials
- Access MySonicWall
- Learn about SonicWall professional services
- Review SonicWall Support services and warranty information
- Register for training and certification
- Request technical support or customer service

To contact SonicWall Support, visit <https://www.sonicwall.com/support/contact-support>.

About This Document

Legend



WARNING: A WARNING icon indicates a potential for property damage, personal injury, or death.



CAUTION: A CAUTION icon indicates potential damage to hardware or loss of data if instructions are not followed.



IMPORTANT, NOTE, TIP, MOBILE, or VIDEO: An information icon indicates supporting information.

SonicOS 6.5 NSsp 12000 / SM 9800 Connectivity
Updated - January 2019
Software Version - 6.5.1.8
232-004621-00 Rev A

Copyright © 2019 SonicWall Inc. All rights reserved.

SonicWall is a trademark or registered trademark of SonicWall Inc. and/or its affiliates in the U.S.A. and/or other countries. All other trademarks and registered trademarks are property of their respective owners

The information in this document is provided in connection with SonicWall Inc. and/or its affiliates' products. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property right is granted by this document or in connection with the sale of SonicWall products. EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS AS SPECIFIED IN THE LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR THIS PRODUCT, SONICWALL AND/OR ITS AFFILIATES ASSUME NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER AND DISCLAIMS ANY EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY WARRANTY RELATING TO ITS PRODUCTS INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SONICWALL AND/OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE, SPECIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR LOSS OF INFORMATION) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DOCUMENT, EVEN IF SONICWALL AND/OR ITS AFFILIATES HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SonicWall and/or its affiliates make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this document and reserves the right to make changes to specifications and product descriptions at any time without notice. SonicWall Inc. and/or its affiliates do not make any commitment to update the information contained in this document.

For more information, visit <https://www.sonicwall.com/legal>.

End User Product Agreement

To view the SonicWall End User Product Agreement, go to: <https://www.sonicwall.com/en-us/legal/license-agreements>.

Open Source Code

SonicWall is able to provide a machine-readable copy of open source code with restrictive licenses such as GPL, LGPL, AGPL when applicable per license requirements. To obtain a complete machine-readable copy, send your written requests, along with certified check or money order in the amount of USD 25.00 payable to "SonicWall Inc.", to:

General Public License Source Code Request
SonicWall Inc. Attn: Jennifer Anderson
1033 McCarthy Blvd
Milpitas, CA 95035